

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Linguaphone Institute Limited
207 Regent Street
London W1R 8AU

Danish Course Handbook

Explanatory Notes
Vocabularies

W37350



The Linguaphone Institute

Linguaphone Institute Limited
207 Regent Street
London W1R 8AU

© 1977 Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

First published 1977
2nd (revised) edition 1979
3rd (revised) edition 1980

W37320



Printed in Great Britain by
Biddles Ltd, Guildford, Surrey

Course written by:

Albert Koue

Validated by:

Jørgen Jørgensen, Queen Alexandra Lecturer
in Danish, University College, London.

Recorded in Copenhagen
in the studios of Danmarks Radio
by the following speakers:

Mogens Bähnecke Paul Grønhøj
Hanne Bolvig Ida Bjørn Nielsen
Sanne Fredsted Torben Thune

With the assistance of:

Steffen Heger, Lærer i fonetik ved Københavns
Universitet.

Sounds section written by:

Steffen Heger

Explanations by:

Albert Koue

Illustrations by:

Per Illum

This handbook written by:

Albert Koue

**The
Linguaphone
Academic
Advisory
Committee:**

The Rt. Hon. Lord Evans, D.Lit., LL.D.,
Hon. Dr. of Letters, University of Paris,
formerly Provost, University College London.

Professor A. C. Gimson, B.A.,
Professor of Phonetics,
University College London.

Monsieur André Martinet,
Professeur à l'Université de Paris (Sorbonne),
Directeur de l'Institut de Linguistique.

Professor Randolph Quirk, CBE, MA, PhD, DLit,
FBA Hon Fil Dr (Universities of Lund and
Uppsala) Hon Dr of Letters (University of Paris)
Quain Professor of English, University College
London.

Professor Albert Sonnenfeld, Ph.D., Chev., Ordre
des Palmes Académiques,
Professor of French and Comparative Literatures,
Chairman, Department of Romance Languages
and Literatures, Princeton University.

Keith Rawson-Jones, B.A.,
Director, Educational Research and Development,
The Linguaphone Institute.
(Secretary)

Indledning Introduction

Henrik Jørgensen: Hello!
My name's Henrik Jørgensen.
I'm a silversmith.
I'm fifty.

Lise Jørgensen:

Contents

Introduction	1
Explanatory notes, Lessons 1-28	3
Glossary of grammatical terms	147
Grammatical appendix	153
Danish sounds	171
Danish vocabulary	181

Bjorn Jørgensen:

Svend Jensen:

Elsie Jensen:

Lene Jensen:

Hello!
My name's Svend Jensen.
I'm a wholesaler.
I'm forty-nine.

Hello!
My name's Elsie Jensen.
I'm Svend's wife.
I'm a housewife.
I'm forty-six.

Hello!
My name's Lene Jensen.
I'm Svend and Elsie's daughter.
I'm a student.
I'm twenty-one.

Indledning Introduction

Henrik Jørgensen: Hello!

My name's Henrik Jørgensen.

I'm a silversmith.

I'm fifty.

Lise Jørgensen: Hello!

My name's Lise Jørgensen.

I'm Henrik's wife.

I'm a housewife.

I'm forty-seven.

Bjørn Jørgensen: Hello!

My name's Bjørn Jørgensen.

I'm Henrik and Lise's son.

I'm a student.

I'm twenty-three.

Svend Jensen: Hello!

My name's Svend Jensen.

I'm a wholesaler.

I'm forty-nine.

Else Jensen: Hello!

My name's Else Jensen.

I'm Svend's wife.

I'm a housewife.

I'm forty-six.

Lene Jensen: Hello!

My name's Lene Jensen.

I'm Svend and Else's daughter.

I'm a student.

I'm twenty-one.

Lektion et

Lesson one

What happens

In this lesson you meet the Danish-American Jørgensen family. Henrik, 50, is a silversmith. He is going to Denmark with his wife Lise, 47, and their son Bjørn.

New words in this lesson

af of
billetter tickets
en bog book
bor live
en by town
et bånd tape
en båndoptager tape-recorder
en dag day
Danmark Denmark
dansk Danish
en dansker Dane
dav(s) hello
der there
det that, it, the
dig you
din your(s)
dit your(s)
dine your(s)
du you
en a(n), one
et a(n), one
er am, are, is
en familie family
en far father, Dad
fint fine
flyver are flying
en formiddag morning
fru Mrs
første first
glæder mig am looking forward
god good
god dag hello
godt good, nice
en grammofonplade gramophone record
gør do

Familien Jørgensen

The Jørgensen family

halvtreds fifty
han he
hans his
har have, has (got)
at have have
hedder am called
hendes her(s)
henter is picking up
her here
hinanden each other
hjem home
hvor where
hvordan how
hvornår when
i in
i dag today
i formiddag this morning
i morgen tomorrow
ja yes
jeg I
jo of course, as you know
en kassette cassette
kommer is coming
en kone wife
kufferter suitcases
kufferterne the suitcases
en lektion lesson
letteste easiest
ligger lies
en lufthavn airport
lyder sounds
en mand husband
en mandag Monday
med with
men but

mig me	skal shall
min my, mine	store great, big, large
mit my, mine	en student undergraduate
en mor mother	syvogfyrre forty-seven
må must, have to	en sølvsmed silversmith
naturligvis of course	en søn son
nej no	så so
nu now	tager take
og and	tak thanks
også also, too	taler talk
ordner is seeing to	en taxa taxi
pakke pack	til to
et pas passport	ting things
penge money	en tirsdag Tuesday
en plade record	tusind a thousand
pænt nice, kind	U.S.A. U.S.A.
på on	velkommen welcome
en rejse journey	vi we
rejser are leaving, are travelling	vores our
selv himself	et ønske wish
sit his	et år year(s)
sine his	

Notes

Sølvsmeden og hans kone *The silversmith and his wife*

- God dag! Hello!**
God dag (lit. *Good day*) is a greeting which may be used at practically any time of the day. It can also be translated *good morning, good afternoon, or good evening*.
- Jeg hedder Henrik Jørgensen.** *My name's Henrik Jørgensen.*
Jeg hedder, lit. *I am called*; **hedder** is the present tense of the verb **at hedde** to be called. There is no exact equivalent in English of this word. The nearest is *am called*, i.e. *my name is* . . .
- Jeg er sølvsmed.** *I'm a silversmith.*
The Danes say *I'm silversmith* (and not *I'm a silversmith*). This absence of an equivalent of *a* is usual with words describing occupation, nationality or religion.
- Jeg er dansker,** *I am Danish* (lit. *I'm Dane*),
See N3.
- Nu skal jeg hjem til Danmark** *Now I'm going home to Denmark*
Skal (lit. *shall*) is often used to translate *am (is/are) going (to)*. It has various uses, as you will see later in the course.
- Nu kommer min kone.** *Here comes my wife.* (lit. *Now is coming my wife.*)

- a Note the word order in **Nu kommer min kone** and **Nu skal jeg hjem til Danmark**. Normally the word order in a Danish sentence is the same as in English, i.e. with the subject before the verb:

Jeg skal hjem til Danmark. *I'm going home to Denmark.*

Min kone kommer. *My wife is coming.*

When the subject does not start the sentence, however, this order is reversed:

Nu skal jeg hjem til Danmark.

Nu kommer min kone.

- b One form of the verb in Danish (**kommer**) means both *comes* and *is coming*.
- 7 **Dags, Lise,** *Hello, Lise,*
Dag (or **dags**) is an abbreviation of **God dag** (N1). These greetings are used by people who know each other well, i.e. family and close friends.
- 8 **hvordan har du det?** *how are you?*
This is a polite phrase which should be learned by heart. Although it is a question the speaker does not really expect an answer. Common replies would be **Fint, tak** (*Fine, thank you*) or **Tak, godt** (*Very well, thanks*). You may also add **Og hvordan har du det?** *And how are you?*
- 9 **Jeg glæder mig til rejsen i morgen.** *I'm looking forward to the journey tomorrow.*
- a **Jeg glæder mig** *I look forward, I am looking forward* (N6b).
- b **rejsen** the journey consists of **rejse** journey and the article **-(e)n**. All nouns in Danish have a gender—common or neuter—and the articles **-(e)n** and **-(e)t** respectively must always be the same gender as the noun to which they refer. When placed before the noun, the articles mean *a(n)*; when added on to it, they mean *the*:
en rejse a journey **rejsen** the journey
et bånd a tape **båndet** the tape.
- When learning a new noun in Danish you should learn its gender at the same time. This is best done by learning words together with their article. Thus, do not learn **rejse**, but **en rejse** or **rejsen**. As you will see further on, adjectives, like articles, have different forms according to gender. If in any doubt about the gender of words, consult the alphabetical vocabulary at the end of the book.
- c **en** and **et** also mean *one*, and with this meaning they are sometimes written **én** and **ét**.
- 10 **Det gør jeg også;** *So am I* (lit. *That do I, too*);
- a **Det** is a useful word which has several meanings and is often used to begin a sentence, especially for emphasis. Here it means *that*.
- b Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **det**!

- 1 11 **men jeg må pakke kufferterne i dag.** *but I must pack the suitcases today.*
 a **må** *must* or *have to*
 b **kufferter** *suitcases*; **kufferterne** *the suitcases* The ending **-ne** (or **-(e)ne**) *the* is used in the plural of nouns of both genders.
- 12 **Hvornår kommer Bjørn?** *When is Bjørn coming (lit. When comes Bjørn)?*
- 13 **I formiddag.** *This morning.*
 a **I** (lit. *in*) is often used with expressions of time, such as **i dag**, *today*, **i morgen** *tomorrow*, and **i formiddag** *this morning*.
 b **formiddag** *morning* in fact means *forenoon*; in Danish there are two words for *morning*: **morgen** (used for the time between sunrise and about 9 a.m.) and **formiddag** (between about 9 a.m. and noon).
- 14 **Han ordner selv sine ting.** *He is seeing to his things himself.*
 a **Han ordner** *he sees to, he is seeing to* (N6b)
 b **sine** means *his, her, its*. Adjectives in Danish, like the articles (N9b and 11b) have three different forms: common (singular), neuter (singular) and plural (the same form is used for common and neuter). **Sine** here is plural: the singular would be **sin** (common) or **sit** (neuter). Hence **sin rejse** *his/her journey*; **sit hus** *his/her house*. You will soon learn to recognise and use the different forms of the adjectives by studying their endings. The neuter forms of most adjectives end in **-t**, and the plural in **-e**. If in any doubt, you can consult the grammatical appendix at the end of the book.
- 15 **Det er fint.** *That's fine.*
 You have already seen (N3) **jeg er** *I am*; **er** here means *is*. In Danish one form of the verb (**er**) translates *am, is* and *are*.

Fru Jørgensen Mrs Jørgensen

- 16 **Vi taler dansk med hinanden.** *We talk Danish to each other.*
 a **taler med** *talk, speak to* (lit. *with*)
 b Note that the words **dansk** and **dansker** are spelt with a small **d**.
- 17 **Min mand er halvtreds år,** *My husband is 50 years old (lit. 50 years),*
 a **mand** means both *man* and *husband*.
 b **år** *year(s)* is the same in the singular and plural.
- 18 **og jeg er syvogfyrre.** *and I am 47 (lit. seven and forty).*
- 19 **Bjørn er vores søn.** *Bjørn is our son.*
 a Note the different pronunciation of the **ø** sounds!
 b **vores** is an easy word, because unlike most Danish adjectives, it has only one form for common, neuter and plural (N14b):
vores hus *our house*; **vores søn** *our son*; **vores kufferter** *our suitcases*.

- 20 **Han er student.** *He is a student.*
 a See N3.
 b **student** *university student, undergraduate*
- 21 **I dag er det mandag.** *It's Monday today (lit. Today it is Monday).*
 Note how **det** (N10a) (here meaning *it*) is used with the days of the week.
- 22 **I morgen, tirsdag, flyver vi til Danmark.** *Tomorrow, Tuesday, we are flying to Denmark.*
 Note the word order. (See N6a.)

Rejsen til Danmark The journey to Denmark

- 23 **Hvordan kommer vi til lufthavnen?** *How are we getting (lit. coming) to the airport?*
lufthavnen *the airport*; an airport would be **en lufthavn** (N9b).
- 24 **Vi tager en taxa til Kennedy lufthavnen.** *We'll take (lit. we take, we are taking) a taxi to Kennedy Airport.*
 a **Vi tager** In Danish the present tense is often used for a near future, even when (as here) the future tense is used in English.
 b Note the two uses of **en** in the same sentence: firstly meaning *a* (**en taxa** *a taxi*), and secondly meaning *the* (**lufthavnen** *the airport*).
- 25 **Det er det letteste.** *That is the easiest.*
 a **let** *easy*; **lettere** *easier*; **lettest** *easiest*; **det letteste** *the easiest*.
 b **det** and **den** are the definite articles used with adjectives instead of the endings **-(e)t** and **-(e)n**; **lektionen** *the lesson* but **den lette lektion** *the easy lesson*. Adjectives not ending in a vowel always take an **-e** after the definite article or a possessive adjective, regardless of whether the word described is common, neuter or plural. Note the spelling of **lette**, **lettere** and **letteste**, with double **t** to keep the short **e** sound.
- 26 **Ja, naturligvis.** *Yes, of course.*
- 27 **Har du vores pas?** *Have you got our passports?*
 a **Har** means *has (got), have (got)*.
 b **Har du?** *Have you got?* Questions are formed in Danish simply by inverting the subject and verb:
Bjørn kommer *Bjørn is coming*; **Kommer Bjørn?** *Is Bjørn coming?*
Jeg må pakke kufferterne *I must pack the suitcases*; **Må jeg pakke kufferterne?** *Must I pack the suitcases?*
Henrik taler dansk *Henrik speaks Danish*; **Taler Henrik dansk?** *Does Henrik speak Danish?*
- c **pas** *passport(s)*, both singular and plural.
- 28 **Mit pas er her,** *My passport's here,*

Mit pas *My passport* **Mit** is the neuter form of **min** *my/mine*, used here to agree with the neuter noun **pas**. Compare the common form **min**:

konen *the wife*; **min kone** *my wife*.

huset *the house*; **mit hus** *my house*.

The plural is **mine** for both genders:

mine kufferter *my suitcases*.

29 **og dit ligger der!** *and yours is (lit. lies) there!*

a **dit** means both *your* and *yours*; similarly **min (mit)** means *my, mine*.

b **der** is sometimes written **dér**.

30 **—og Bjørns pas?** *—and Bjørn's passport?*

Note that **Bjørns** *Bjørn's* does not have an apostrophe in Danish as it does in English.

31 **Det har han selv.** *He's got it (lit. That has he himself).*

This is more emphatic than **Han har det selv**.

Sønnen *The son*

32 **Henrik Jørgensen er min far, og hans kone, Lise, er min mor.** *Henrik Jørgensen is my father, and his wife, Lise, is my mother.*

a **min** *my* is used, because we are talking about **en far** and **en mor** (N28).

b **hans** *his*. You have already seen another word meaning *his* (**sine**, N14). The difference between **hans** and **sine** is that **sine** refers to the subject of the sentence, whereas **hans** does not. **Bjørn ordner sine ting** means *Bjørn sees to his (i.e. his own) things*, since **sine** refers to Bjørn, the subject of the sentence; **Bjørn ordner hans ting** would mean *Bjørn sees to his (i.e. somebody else's) things*, as **hans** refers to someone other than the subject, Bjørn.

33 **Hendes store ønske er en rejse til Danmark,** *Her great wish is a journey to Denmark,*

Note the ending **-e** in **store** after the possessive **hendes** (N25b).

34 **så i morgen rejser vi.** *so tomorrow we're leaving (lit. travelling).*

a **i morgen** *tomorrow* (N13a).

b **rejser vi** *we are leaving* (N6a).

Bjørn kommer hjem. *Bjørn comes home.*

35 **Dav, mor, tak skal du have.** *Hello, mother, thank you.*

a **Dav** See N7.

b **tak skal du have** *thank you, thank you so much* (lit. *you shall have thanks*). This is one of the many ways of saying *thank you* in Danish. You will learn many more!

36 **Har du dine kufferter med?** *Have you got your suitcases with (you)?*

a **Dine** is the plural of both **din** (common) and **dit** (neuter). Note that the **-e** here is a plural ending, unlike the **-e** which is added to an adjective after the definite article (N25b).

b **med** *with*, i.e. *with you*: *you* is understood from the context.

37 **Ja, og passet.** *Yes, and the passport.*

passet *the passport*. When you add **-en** or **-et** to a word, it is necessary to double the final consonant to keep a preceding vowel short; so **et pas** (with a short **a** sound) becomes **passet**. Compare the spelling of **let**, **lettere** and **lettest** (N25a).

38 **Vi rejser jo i morgen.** *We are leaving tomorrow.*

jo This little word is frequently used in conversation and mostly means *of course, as you (already) know*. Often (as here) it is not necessary to translate it.

39 **Hvor er far?** *Where's Dad?*

40 **Han er i byen.** *He is in town (lit. in the town).*

41 **Han henter penge og billetter.** *He is picking up money and tickets.*

a **penge** *money* is always plural in Danish.

b **billetter** *tickets*; **en billet** is a *ticket*; **billetten** *the ticket*.

42 **Ja, og far har sit.** *Yes, and Dad's got his.*

sit *his* ends in **-t**, to agree with **et pas** (N14b).

43 **Er det din bog?** *Is that your book?*

44 **Nej, det er din.** *No, it's yours.*

45 **Er det fars bånd?** *Is that Dad's tape?*

46 **Nej, det er mit.** *No, it's mine.*

Note the uses and meanings of **det** in the last four sentences.

47 **Far har sit på båndoptageren.** *Dad's is on the tape-recorder (lit. Dad has his on the tape-recorder).*

48 **Jeg har en kassette og en grammofonplade med til dig.** *I have brought you a cassette and a gramophone record. (lit. I have a cassette and a gramophone record with (me) for you).*

til dig *for you*. You have already seen the word **du** meaning *you*; this is what the Danes use when *you* is the subject of the sentence. In all other cases they use **dig**. For example:

Du flyver til Danmark *You are flying to Denmark* (**Du** *you* is the subject of the sentence); but **Vi flyver med dig til Danmark** *We are flying with you to Denmark* (**Vi** *we* is the subject). You will see more examples of **du** and **dig** later.

49 **Tusind tak! Det er pænt af dig.** *Many (lit. a thousand) thanks! That's kind of you. af dig* See N48.

50 **Det er en plade med Mozart.** *It's a Mozart record (lit. It's a record with Mozart).*

51 **Det lyder godt.** *That sounds nice.*

2 Lektion to

Lesson two

I Kastrup lufthavn

At Kastrup airport

What happens

In this lesson you meet the Jensen family from Copenhagen. Svend, who went to school with Henrik Jørgensen, is 49, and a wholesaler of gold- and silverware. His wife, Else, is 46. Svend and Else are waiting at Kastrup (Copenhagen Airport). Henrik, Lise and Bjørn go through the different formalities there.

New words in this lesson

alt everything, all	i at
anden second	en idé idea
Amerika America	igen back, again
at to	ikke not
en bagage luggage	en information information,
bliver is, gets	information desk
et cafeteria cafeteria	jo yes
cigaretter cigarettes	(en) kaffe coffee
en cognac cognac	kender know(s)
en dame lady	en kop cup
de they	en krone crown, krone
De you (formal)	København Copenhagen
Deres your(s) (formal)	køber buy
at drikke drink	lander is landing
feder is fattening	lige just
fem five	mange many
en flaske bottle	mens while
et fly aeroplane	minutter minutes
(en) fløde cream	må may
at fortolde declare	et navn name
fra from	niogfyrré forty-nine
en frue madam	noget something, anything
en frøken miss	nå well, so
først only	om in
får get	orden order
gennem through	en paskontrol passport control
gerne with pleasure	se see
en grosserer wholesaler	seks six
(et) guld gold	seks hundrede six hundred
halv half	seksogfyrré forty-six
hr. sir, Mr	en servitrice waitress
et hundrede hundred	skal must

en skolekammerat schoolmate
spørger ask
statsborgere citizens, subjects
(et) sukker sugar
syv seven
sælger sell(s)
(et) sølv silver
sølvvarer silverware
så then
en tid time
en tier 10-kroner note
en time hour
en told customs
en tolder customs officer

tror think
ung young
varer wares, articles
venter are waiting
værsgo' please, here you are
en whisky whisky

det er i orden/alt i orden all right
 mange tak many thanks
 nej tak no thank you
 så gerne certainly
 til tiden on time
 vær så god, værsgo please, here you are

Notes

Skolekammerater School friends

- Jeg er fra København, og jeg er grosserer. *I am from Copenhagen, and I am a wholesaler.*
 jeg er grosserer. See L1 N3.
- Jeg køber og sælger guld- og sølvvarer. *I buy and sell gold- and silverware.*
 a en vare article; varer articles, goods. The plural of words ending in -e is with -r, e.g.
 en plade a record; to plader two records.
 b guld- og sølvvarer is short for guldvarer og sølvvarer goldware and silverware.
- Vi to venter i Kastrup lufthavn. *The two of us (lit. we two) are waiting in Kastrup airport.*
 Vi venter See L1 N6b.
- Henrik er Svends skolekammerat. *Henrik was (lit. is) Svend's schoolmate.*
 Note this use of the present tense in Danish where the past would be used in English.
- Men jeg kender ikke familien Jørgensen. *But I don't know the Jørgensen family.*
 jeg kender ikke *I don't know* Note that *do* is not translated; the negative in Danish is formed simply by adding *ikke* to the verb:
 jeg køber *I buy*; jeg køber ikke *I do not buy*
 Henrik kommer *Henrik is coming*; Henrik kommer ikke *Henrik is not coming*.

- 6 **Tror du, flyet er her til tiden?** *Do you think the aeroplane will be here on time?*
 a **Tror du . . . ?** *Do you think (lit. Think you) . . . ?* (L1 N27b)
 b **flyet er her til tiden** *the aeroplane will be here on time* This is another example of the present tense used to express the near future (L1 N24a).
 c **til tiden** *on time* (lit. *to the time*)
 7 **Jeg spørger lige i informationen.** *I'll just ask at the information desk.*
 8 **Nej, det ordner jeg.** *No, I'll see to that.*

I informationen *At the information desk*

- 9 **Om fem minutter, hr.!** *In five minutes, sir!*
 a Note the use of **om** to translate *in* when it means *after a certain period has elapsed*.
 b **hr.** *sir* is an abbreviation of **herre** *gentleman*; **hr. Jensen** *Mr Jensen*.
 10 **Tak skal De have.** *Thank you.*
 Contrast **tak skal du have** (L1 N35b). In Danish there are two words for *you*—**du**, the familiar form used when addressing family and close friends, and **De**, used for strangers, people in authority, etc. Svend says **De** here, because he is speaking to a stranger.

Svend og Else venter. *Svend and Else wait.*

- 11 **Så kommer de først om en halv time.** *Then they'll only be here in half an hour* (lit. *then come they first in half an hour*).
 a **Så** *then* Note this new meaning of **så** (L1 N34).
 b **først** (lit. *first*) can mean *only* in front of expressions of time.
 12 **De skal jo først hente bagagen,** *Of course they must pick up the luggage first,*
 a **skal** *must, have to* Note this use of **skal**.
 b **jo** See L1 N38.
 c **hente** You have already seen (L1 N41) **Han henter penge og billetter.** *He is picking up money and tickets.* (**At**) **hente** is the infinitive of **hente**, corresponding to (*to*) **pick up** in English, which is used with **skal**, **må** and other modal verbs:
jeg henter bagagen *I am picking up the luggage*
jeg skal hente bagagen *I shall pick up the luggage*
jeg må hente bagagen *I must pick up the luggage.*
 13 **og så skal de gennem tolden.** *and then they must go through customs* (lit. *and then must they through the customs*).

- a **skal** and the other modal verbs are often used, as here, without another verb, when the meaning is obvious from the context.
 b **told** is singular and means *customs, customs office, and duty*.
 14 **Skal vi ikke drikke en kop kaffe, mens vi venter?** *Shall we have (lit. shall we not drink) a cup of coffee while we wait?*
 a **Skal vi ikke . . . ?** *Shall we (not) . . . ?* This is a common way of suggesting something in Danish.
 b **en kop kaffe** *a cup (of) coffee* In expressions of quantity when the substance or material is indefinite, there is no equivalent of the English *of*; but when the substance is specified, **af** is used:
en kop kaffe *a cup of coffee*, but **en kop af Elses kaffe** *a cup of Else's coffee*.
 c The Danes say **drikke en kop kaffe** *have* (lit. *drink*) *a cup of coffee*. Coffee is usually served black in Denmark; white coffee would be **kaffe med fløde**.
 15 **Jo, det er en god idé.** *Yes, that's a good idea.*
 a **Jo** *yes* is always used instead of **ja** after a negative question. For example:
Skal vi drikke en kop kaffe? Ja.
Skal vi ikke drikke en kop kaffe? Jo.
 b **en god idé** You have already seen (L1 N14) how adjectives take different endings depending on whether the noun which follows is common, neuter or plural. Here **god** is common, like **en idé**; the neuter and plural forms would be **godt** and **gode**: **et godt bånd, gode kufferter**.

I cafeteriet *In the cafeteria*

- 16 **I cafeteriet** *In the cafeteria*
 Note that the ending **-a** is dropped when the definite article **-(e)t** is added (L1 N9):
et cafeteria *a cafeteria*; **cafeteriet** *the cafeteria*.
 17 **Må jeg få to kopper kaffe, frøken?** *May I have (lit. get) two cups of coffee, miss?*
 a **Må** *may* is another use of **må** (see L1 N11a).
 b **kopper** The plural of **kop** is **kopper**, with double **p** to keep the preceding short **o** sound.
 c **frøken** is the usual way to address a waitress or female shop assistant; **frøken Lene Jensen** is *Miss Lene Jensen*.
 18 **Så gerne, hr.!** *Certainly, sir!*
 This is the expression usually used by waitresses, shop assistants and so on when attending customers.

- 19 **Det bliver syv kroner.** *That is (lit. gets, becomes) seven kroner.*
The crown or **kroner** (plural **kroner**) is the Danish unit of currency. It is divided into 100 **øre**.
- 20 **Vær så god,** *Here you are, please (lit. be so good)* is mostly abbreviated to **værsgo'**. It is always used when handing something to somebody.
- 21 **Tak, så får De tre kroner igen.** *Thank you, that's (lit. then you get) three kroner change.*
a **tre kroner igen** (lit. *three kroner back*), i.e. *three kroner change*.
b **Får** is the present tense of **at få to get** (N17). Compare the use of the two forms (like **hente** and **henter**, N12c):
Bjørn må få en kop kaffe *Bjørn may have a cup of coffee*; but
Bjørn får en kop kaffe. *Bjørn gets a cup of coffee.*
With the exception of modal verbs (**skal**, **må**, etc.), Danish verbs always end in **-r** in the present tense: **er**, **har**, **flyver**, **kommer**, etc.
- 22 **Nej tak, det feder.** *No, thank you, it's fattening (lit. it fattens).*
Note **Nej tak** *No thank you* but **Ja tak** (lit. *yes thank you*) *yes please*.

I paskontrollen *At the passport control*

- 23 **I paskontrollen** *At the passport control*
a **en kontrol** *a control*; the control is **kontrollen** with double **I** because the preceding **o** is short (N17b).
b **paskontrol** means both *passport control* and *passport official*.
- 24 **det er i orden.** *that's in order, that's all right.*
- 25 **Må jeg se Deres pas, frue?** *May I see your passport, madam?*
a **Deres** *your* is from the polite form of **you**, **De**.
Deres and **De** are pronounced the same as **deres** *their* and **de** *they*.
Like **vores** (L1 N19b), **Deres** is invariable: **Deres mand** *your husband*;
Deres hus *your house*; **Deres kufferter** *your suitcases*.
b **frue** *madam* is a polite word, not used much nowadays.
Mrs Lise Jørgensen is **fru Lise Jørgensen**.
- 26 **Ja, her er det,** *Yes, here it is (lit. here is it).* (L1 N6a)
- 27 **og her er min søns, værsgo'.** *and here is my son's.*
The possessive (L1 N30) is formed in Danish, as in English, simply by adding **s** to the possessor (but no apostrophe is used in Danish):
Elses mand *Else's husband*; **min kones navn** *my wife's name*;
sølvmedens kone *the silversmith's wife*.
- 28 **Nå, det er den unge mands!** *So it is the young man's!*
a **det er it** can refer to both common and neuter nouns:
Det er min plade *It's my record*
Det er mit pas *It's my passport*.

- b **den unge mands** *the young man's* **Den** is the definite article, common gender, used before an adjective (L1 N25b); **manden** *the man*; **den unge mand** *the young man*.
- 29 **Alt i orden.** *Everything in order, that's all right.*

I tolden *At the customs*

- 30 **Er det Deres bagage?** *Is this your luggage?*
- 31 **Er De danske statsborgere?** *Are you Danish citizens?*
a **De** *you* (N10) is both singular and plural.
b **danske** *Danish* Note the plural ending **-e** of the adjective. Adjectives of both genders take **-e** in the plural, both in the definite and the indefinite forms (L1 N14b). Adjectives ending in **-sk**, however, do not take **-t** in the neuter singular: you would say **en dansk statsborger** *a Danish citizen* but **et dansk navn** *a Danish name*.
c **statsborgere** *citizens*, plural of **statsborger**. There are several noun plural endings in Danish. You have already seen the ending **-(e)r** in **varer**, **kopper** (N2 and 17). **-e** is another such ending: **et navn** *a name*, **navne** *names*; **en grosserer** *a wholesaler*, **grosserere** *wholesalers*.
- 32 **Har De noget at fortolde?** *Have you (got) anything to declare?*
a **noget** *something, anything*
b **at fortolde** is *to declare, pay duty on*.
- 33 **Vi har i alt seks hundrede cigaretter, to flasker cognac og en flaske whisky.** *Altogether we've got 600 cigarettes, two bottles of cognac and one bottle of whisky.*
a **cigaretter** plural of **en cigaret**
b **to flasker cognac** *two bottles of cognac*: a bottle is **en flaske**.
c **i alt** *in all, altogether*.

3 Lektion tre Lesson three

Fra lufthavnen Coming from the airport

What happens

Henrik and Lise Jørgensen meet Svend and Else Jensen and their daughter Lene at Kastrup airport. Lene and Bjørn start talking to each other. They drive through Copenhagen to the Jensens' home, and see the old and new parts of the city.

New words in this lesson

alle all	højhuse tall buildings
allesammen all of you	I you (plural)
andre other(s)	ih oh
en ankomsthal arrivals hall	en ingeniør engineer
et bagsæde back seat	klemmer squeeze
bag ved behind	kom come
en bil car	kører are driving
blevet become	lyshårede fair-haired
bygger are building	at lære learn
et centrum centre	en mand man
en datter daughter	mon I wonder
Dem you (formal)	at møde meet
den the	nej oh dear
der who	nitten nineteen
deres their	nok probably
derhenne over there	os us
endnu yet	en pige girl
enogtyve twenty-one	en rådhusplads town hall square
foran in front (of)	samme same
for at to	sammen together
foreslår suggest	set seen
forældre parents	sidder sit
en fødselsdag birthday, anniversary	en side side
glad (for at) happy (to), glad	sig oneself, himself, herself
glædet (mig) looked forward	siger say
går go	skyskrabere skyscrapers
haft had	slanke slim
hende her	snart soon
hjemme (at) home	stadig still
hundrede og halvtreds 150	en statue statue
hvem who(m)	spændt (på at) eager (to)
hvor how	står is standing
hyggeligt nice, cosy, homely	sætter sig sits down

sødt sweet
til at to
tre three
tredje third
tyve twenty
ud out
var was
ved at
ved siden af next to
vel nok really
venner friends
vil will, want to
vist probably

en vold rampart
en voldgrav moat
at være be
åh oh
at blive dus start calling each other *du*
at hilse på greet, meet
at lære at kende make the acquaintance
of, meet
at være dus call each other *du*, be on
first-name terms
nitten hundrede og femoghalvtreds
1955

Notes

I ankomsthallen In the arrivals hall

- Der er de jo!** *There they are!*
jo See L1 N38.
- Det er vel nok hyggeligt at se dig igen.** *It's really nice to see you again/How nice it is to see you again!*
vel nok really is frequently used for emphasis without meaning very much itself; sometimes it has different translations, depending on the context.
- hyggelig(t)** is a difficult word to translate, meaning *cosy, homely, nice, comfortable*:
et hyggeligt hjem a nice (cosy, comfortable) home
en hyggelig mand a nice man
- hyggeligt** As the impersonal **det** is neuter, any adjective used as a complement to it must also be neuter.
- at se to see** The infinitive (L2 N12c) is often accompanied by **at** (like *to* in English). However, when it follows a modal verb (**må, skal**, etc.) **at** is omitted:
Vi venter at se Henrik. *We're expecting (lit. waiting) to see Henrik;* but
Vi må se Henrik. *We must see Henrik.*
- Det er Lise, min kone.** *This is Lise, my wife.*
This is the normal way of introducing people in Danish.
- Har De haft en god rejse, fru Jørgensen?** *Did you have (lit. Have you had) a good journey, Mrs. Jørgensen?*
- haft had; har De haft?** *Have you had?* **Haft** is what is called the past participle of the verb **at have to have**; the past participle is used with the present of **at have** to form the perfect tense, corresponding to *I have had (gone, spoken, etc.)* in English. Danish past participles always end in **-t** or **-et**. As in English, however, some verbs, called

- strong verbs, also have a change of vowel in the past tenses. If you are in doubt about the past participle of any verb, see the list of strong and irregular verbs on page 164.
- b Svend addresses Lise as **De** and **fru Jørgensen** because he hasn't met her before.
- 5 **det var sødt af Dem at hente os her i Kastrup.** *it was sweet of you to pick us up here at Kastrup.*
- a **var** (from the verb **at være** to be) was, were.
- b **sødt** See N2c.
- c **Dem** is the form of **De** which is used when *you* is not the subject of the sentence (compare **du** and **dig**, L1 N48). For example:
- | | | |
|--|---|------------|
| du er sød <i>you are sweet</i> | } | (informal) |
| jeg kender dig <i>I know you</i> | | |
| Jeg har en bog til dig <i>I've got a book for you</i> | } | (formal) |
| De er sød <i>you are sweet</i> | | |
| Jeg kender Dem <i>I know you</i> | | |
| Jeg har en bog til Dem <i>I've got a book for you</i> | | |
- 6 **Ih, hvor har jeg glædet mig til at møde Dem og Deres mand.** *Oh, how I have been looking forward (lit. how I have looked forward) to meeting you and your husband.*
- a **hvor** *how*; do not confuse it with **hvordan** *how* (L1), which is only used in questions.
- b **glædet** past participle (see N4a) of the verb **at glæde** (sig).
- c **Dem og Deres mand.** Else is addressing the Jørgensens formally (i.e. as **De**); if speaking informally she would say **til at møde dig og din mand** (L2 N10 and 25).
- 7 **Skal vi ikke være dus?** *Shouldn't we call each other by our Christian names (lit. Shall we not be "dus", i.e. say "du" to each other)?*
- Skal vi ikke** See L2 N14a.
- 8 **I dag siger vi du til alle vores venner.** *Nowadays we say "du" to all our friends.*
- a Since about 1970 most people have used the informal **du** more than the formal **De**. Children and young people are always addressed as **du**; but be careful about using **du** to older people.
- b **venner** *friends* is the plural of **ven** *friend*, with double **n** to keep the preceding **e** short. (Compare **kop** and **kopper**, L2 N17b.)
- 9 **Jeg er glad for at lære dig at kende, Else.** *I am happy to make your acquaintance (pleased to meet you), Else.*
- a The idiomatic expression **at lære at kende** means *to make the acquaintance, to get (lit. to learn) to know*. **Jeg lærer Henrik at kende,** *I make Henrik's acquaintance.*
- b **at lære** See N2d.

- c Note the position of **dig**. Henrik now says **dig** instead of **Dem**, because he's calling the Jensens **du**.

Ung pige A young girl

- 10 **Ung pige** A young girl
In descriptive titles, as here, the article is often omitted. However, you could also say **en ung pige**.
- 11 **Jeg vil være ingeniør.** *I want to become (lit. be) an engineer.*
- 12 **Jeg er spændt på at møde deres søn.** *I am eager to meet their son.*
spændt på at (møde) *anxious to (meet)*; **på** generally means *on, upon*.
- 13 **Hedder han ikke Bjørn?** *His name's Bjørn, isn't it?*
- 14 **Mon ikke det er den pæne unge mand** *I wonder if he is (not) the nice young man*
- a **Mon** *I wonder* is usually used at the beginning of a sentence:
- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| Mon han er pæn? | } | <i>I wonder if he is nice?</i> |
| Er han mon pæn? | | |
| Mon ikke flyet lander nu? | } | <i>I wonder if the plane is landing now?</i> |
| Mon flyet ikke lander nu? | | |
- (Note that **ikke** can come either before or after the subject.)
- Mon de har set mig?** *I wonder if they have seen me?* The subject and verb are not inverted after **mon**, as they are after other elements (see L1 N6a).
- b **den pæne unge mand** Note the definite ending **-e** in **pæne** and **unge** (L1 N25b). When used after the definite article the adjective always ends in **-e**:
- | | | | |
|----------|--------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Singular | common | den pæne familie | <i>the nice family</i> |
| | neuter | det pæne hus | <i>the nice house</i> |
| Plural | common | de pæne kufferter | <i>the nice suitcases</i> |
| | neuter | de pæne huse | <i>the nice houses</i> |
- c **pæn** means *nice, good-looking* and usually refers to the appearance of something or someone.

Ung mand A young man

- 15 **Mig har de ikke set endnu.** *They haven't seen me yet.*
- a **mig** *me* You have already seen **du** and **dig** in L1. The full list of the Danish pronouns and possessive adjectives is as follows:
- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| jeg <i>I</i> | mig <i>me</i> | min <i>my, mine</i> |
| du <i>you</i> | dig <i>you</i> | din <i>your(s)</i> |
| han <i>he</i> | ham <i>him</i> | sin } <i>his</i> |
| | | hans } |

hun <i>she</i>	hende <i>her</i>	sin <i>her(s)</i>
		hendes <i>her(s)</i>
den <i>it</i>	den <i>it</i>	dens <i>its</i>
det <i>it</i>	det <i>it</i>	dets <i>its</i>
vi <i>we</i>	os <i>us</i>	vores <i>our(s)</i>
I <i>you</i>	jer <i>you</i>	jeres <i>your(s)</i>
(I is the plural of the informal du)		
de <i>they</i>	dem <i>them</i>	deres <i>their(s)</i>
De <i>you</i>	Dem <i>you</i>	Deres <i>your(s)</i>
(De is formal, both singular and plural).		

b set past participle of the verb **at se** (N4a).

c Note the word order!

16 **Det er vist hende den lyshårede, der står derhenne.** *She's probably the blonde (lit. It is probably her, the fair-haired one) (who is) standing over there.*

a **lyshåret** blonde, fair-haired; **den lyshårede** the blonde, the fair-haired one. When adjectives (and past participles) end in **-et**, the **-t** is changed to **d** when the ending **-e** is added.

b **den lyshårede** the fair-haired one; note that *one* is not translated.

c **den** is the definite article, common gender, used before an adjective (L1 N25b). When referring to a person—here *girl* is understood—the common gender **den** is always used.

17 **Men der har vi jo Bjørn.** *But there's Bjørn (lit. But there we have Bjørn).*

Der har vi is a common way of presenting people and things in Danish.

18 **Hvem mon det er, han taler med?** *I wonder who he is talking to?* (lit. *whom, I wonder, is it he is talking to?*)

a **Hvem** means both *who* and *whom*.

b See N14a. When there is another interrogative word (**hvem**, **hvor**, etc.) in the sentence, **mon** always comes after the interrogative:

Hvor mon Lene er nu? *I wonder where Lene is now?*

You have now seen the three ways of constructing a sentence with **mon**:

Mon han er pæn (lit. *I wonder he is nice*)?

Er han mon pæn (lit. *Is he I wonder nice*)?

Hvem mon han er (lit. *Who I wonder he is*)?

19 **Hende må I også hilse på.** *You must meet her too (lit. Her must you also greet).*

a **I you**, plural of **du**.

b **at hilse på** greet, make the acquaintance of, meet.

20 **Vi er lige blevet dus med dine forældre.** *We have just become "dus" with your parents.*

a **blevet** past participle of **at blive** (N4a). Some verbs, such as **at blive** to become, form the perfect with **at være** and not **at have**: **jeg har set** I have seen; **jeg er blevet** I have become. If in doubt about which auxiliary verb to use in the perfect, consult the list of verbs in the appendix.

b **at blive dus** is to start saying "**du**" to each other; **at være dus** is to be on first-name terms and call each other "**du**" already.

21 **Vil du ikke også sige du til os?** *Won't you say "du" to us too?*

22 **Jo, gerne.** *Yes, with pleasure.*

Jo See L2 N15a.

23 **Kom, vi går ud til bilen med bagagen.** *Come, we'll go out to the car with the luggage.*

a **Kom** is from **at komme** to come. The imperative is formed by dropping the final **-e** from the infinitive:

at tage to take; **Tag en taxa** take a taxi.

at hente to fetch; **Hent bagagen** fetch the luggage.

Note that a consonant which is doubled before the final **-e** of the infinitive is not doubled in the imperative:

at sætte sig to sit down; but **sæt dig** sit down.

The imperative is invariable, i.e. the same form is used for **du**, **De** and **I**.

b **bil** car is the abbreviation of **automobil**.

24 **Ja, kom nu allesammen!** *Yes, come along (lit. come now) everybody!* **allesammen** means *all of us* (you, them):

vi kommer allesammen we all come (lit. we come, all of us).

I Svends og Elses bil In Svend and Else's car.

25 **Jeg foreslår, at Henrik sætter sig foran ved siden af mig.** *I suggest that Henrik sits in front next to me.*

The verb **at sætte sig** to sit (down):

jeg sætter mig I sit

du sætter dig you sit

han (hun) sætter sig he (she) sits

den (det) sætter sig it sits

vi sætter os we sit

I sætter jer you (plural) sit

de sætter sig they sit

De sætter Dem you (polite) sit

Verbs like this, which have **sig** in the infinitive, are called reflexive verbs, and cannot be used without the reflexive pronouns **mig**, **dig**, etc. **At glæde sig** to look forward is another: **jeg glæder mig** I look forward, **vi glæder os** we look forward, etc.

- 26 **Så sidder I andre fire slanke på bagsædet.** *And (lit. then) you four other little (lit. slim) ones sit on the back seat.*
 a **slank** *slim*; **I slanke** *you slim (ones).*
 b **sidder** *sit*. Note the difference between **at sætte sig** (lit. *seat oneself*), *sit down*, and **at sidde** *to sit, be sitting*:
Jeg sætter mig på bagsædet *I sit (i.e. I sit down) on the back seat*;
Jeg sidder på bagsædet *I sit (i.e. I am sitting) on the back seat.*
At sætte sig is reflexive (i.e. it is always used with the reflexive pronouns **mig, sig**, etc.), whereas **at sidde** is not.
 c The present tense is used here, although a future is suggested.
 27 **Vi klemmer os godt sammen.** *We'll squeeze up well (lit. we squeeze us well together).*
 28 **Så går det nok.** *Then it will be fine.*
 This is an idiomatic expression—don't try to translate it literally!

Gennem København Through Copenhagen

- 29 **Nej, hvor de bygger her på Amager!** *Oh, dear, how they are building here on Amager!*
Amager is the small island on which part of Copenhagen and Kastrup airport are situated.
 30 **Det er Christianshavns vold.** *Those are (lit. That is) the ramparts of Christianshavn (lit. Christianshavn's ramparts).*
 Christianshavn is part of Copenhagen, founded in 1618.
 31 **—og voldgraven er stadig den samme.** *—and the moat is still the same.*
den refers to **voldgraven** which is common gender.
 32 **Er det ikke Langebro?** *Isn't this Langebro?*
Langebro (lit. Long Bridge) is one of the three bridges connecting Sjælland (Zealand) with Amager.
 33 **Jo—og nu er vi snart ved Rådhuspladsen.** *Yes—and now we'll soon be at the Town Hall Square.*
ved Rådhuspladsen *at (or near) the Town Hall Square*; **på Rådhuspladsen** *in the Town Hall Square.*
 34 **Ja, der er statuen af H. C. Andersen.** *Yes, there's the statue of Hans Christian Andersen.*
 H. C. Andersen, as Hans Christian Andersen is known in Denmark, is probably the best-known Danish writer. He is famous for his fairy tales, which have been translated into many languages.
 35 **Ja, den er fra 1955 (nitten hundrede og femoghalvtreds).** *Yes, it dates from (lit. is from) 1955.*

- a **den** *it* (and not the impersonal **det**), because it refers to something specific, i.e. **en statue**.
 b **1955 nitten hundrede og femoghalvtreds** (lit. *nineteen hundred and five and fifty*). The numbers from one to five hundred:
en or **et** 1, **to**, **tre** 3, **fire** 4, **fem** 5, **seks** 6, **syv** 7, **otte** 8, **ni** 9, **ti** 10, **elleve** 11, **tolv** 12, **tretten** 13, **fjorten** 14, **femten** 15, **seksten** 16, **sytten** 17, **atten** 18, **nitten** 19, **tyve** 20, **enogtyve** (lit. *one and twenty*) 21, **toogtyve** (lit. *two and twenty*) 22, **trediv** 30, **fyrre** 40, **halvtreds** 50, **tres** 60, **halvfjerds** 70, **firs** 80, **halvfems** 90, **hundrede** 100, **fem hundrede** 500.
 Note that all the numbers up to 100 are written as one word in Danish: **seksoghalvfjerds** 76; **fireogtres** 64.
 36 **Åh, fra 150 (hundrede og halvtreds) -års fødselsdagen?** *Oh, for (lit. from) the 150th anniversary of his birth (lit. the 150-years' birthday)?*
 Note the **-s** in the Danish expression.
 37 **Nu kører vi gennem centrum.** *Now we are driving through the centre*
centrum is used without the definite article when it means the centre of a town.
 38 **Vi er snart hjemme.** *We'll soon be home.*
hjemme means *at home*; contrast **hjem** which means *home, (a) home*:
Vi kører hjem til Svend. *We drive home to Svend's.*
Han har et hyggeligt hjem. *He has a cosy home.*
Han er hjemme. *He is at home.*

4 Lektion fire

Lesson four

What happens

The Jensens bring their guests home, show them their house, and instal them in their new guest rooms. Svend and Henrik chat over a drink.

New words in this lesson

al all
anden other
et badeværelse bathroom
at bo stay
bygget built
både both
en dagligstue sitting-room
de the
dejligt lovely
en del part
dem them
en drink drink
eksporteret exported
at finde find
fire four
fjerde fourth
for for
forandret (dig) changed
fået got
gamle old
en gang corridor
gjort done
et glas glass
glemmer are forgetting
et gæsteværelse spare room
gået gone
hel whole
heldig lucky, successful
heller ikke neither
hentet fetched, picked up
herind in here
herover over here
herud out here
at hjælpe help

Hjem til Svend og Else

Coming home to Svend and Else's

et hjørne corner
hos with, at
et hus house
hvad what
en håndbagage hand luggage
en håndvask wash-basin
ind in
indenfor inside
indrettet arranged, established
inviteret invited
jer you (plural)
jeres your(s)
et kammer small room
kan can
kun only
kørt driven
at lave make, do
lavet made
ligner look like
lille little
lovet promised
lyst pleasure
meget much, a lot
mere more
meste most
nydt enjoyed
når when
pakket ud unpacked
en plads room, place
en rest rest
et salg sale
sat placed, put
selv ourselves
senere later

en seng bed
ser ud looks
en sherry sherry
sikken what
et skab cupboard, wardrobe
smuk beautiful
at spise eat
til for
en tur ride, trip
(et) tøj clothes
en udsigt view
en vej way
været been

at have lyst til wish, want, look forward to
både . . . og both . . . and
det er gået fint it has been going fine
det vil vi gerne we would like to
dig selv yourself
en hel del quite a lot
heller ikke not . . . either, nor, neither
hvad med? what about?
i forvejen beforehand, in advance
i udlandet abroad
jo tak yes please
med det samme at once

Notes

På vej ind On the way in

- Hjem til Svend og Else** *Coming home to Svend and Else's til Svend to Svend's, to Svend's home.*
- Så er vi der!** *Here we are!*
- Ja, der har I vores hus.** *Yes, this is our house.* (lit. *yes, there you have our house*).
See L3 N17. **der** is always stressed when it means *there*; listen carefully to its pronunciation.
- Nu skal jeg hjælpe jer ud af bilen.** *Now I'll help you out of the car.*
jer you (plural) corresponds to **dig** in the singular; **I** (the plural of **du**) is used for the subject of the sentence, **jer** elsewhere:
I har et hus you (plural) *have a house*
jeg hjælper jer *I help you*
er det fra jer? *Is that from you?*
Compare **du** and **dig** (L1 N46a) and **De** and **Dem** (L3 N5c).
- Ja, så kan Bjørn og Henrik tage de tre andre.** *Yes, then Bjørn and Henrik can take the other three* (lit. *the three others*).
- Og vi piger tager al håndbagagen.** *And we girls (will) take all the hand luggage.*
a **al** all has three forms: **al** (common), **alt** (neuter) and **alle** (plural):
en bagage luggage; **al bagagen** all the luggage
et arbejde work; **alt arbejdet** all the work
alle vores venner all our friends.
b Note that **tage** and **tager** are pronounced **ta** and **tar**!
- Hvor har det været en dejlig tur** *What a nice ride that was* (lit. *has been*)

- a **Hvor** *how, what* in exclamations (as here) is not stressed; **hvor** *where* in questions is stressed. Listen to the difference in pronunciation.
- b **været** *been* past participle of **at være** *to be* (L3 N4a).
- 8 **Og hvor har jeg nydt at se gamle Danmark igen!** *And how I've enjoyed seeing (lit. to see) old Denmark again!*
- a **nydt** *enjoyed* from **at nyde** *to enjoy*.
- b The adjective **gammel** *old*:
en gammel mand *an old man* **den gamle mand** *the old man*
et gammelt hus *an old house* **det gamle hus** *the old house*
 The Danes say **gamle** (and not **gammele**) for easier pronunciation.
- c **gamle Danmark** *old Denmark* In speaking of familiar places or people the definite article can be omitted, as here, so that the Danes say **gamle Danmark** (meaning **det gamle Danmark**) instead of **gammelt Danmark**; **gamle Henrik** (meaning **den gamle Henrik**) instead of **gammel Henrik**.
- 9 **Hvor har I gjort meget for os:** *You've done so much for us* (lit. *How much you have done for us*):
gjort *done* from **at gøre** *to do*.
- 10 **I har hentet os i lufthavnen.** *You (have) picked us up at the airport.*
- 11 **I har kørt os herud.** *You drove (lit. you have driven) us out here.*
- 12 **Og I har inviteret os til at bo her.** *And you ('ve) invited us to stay here.*
at bo *to stay* also means *to live*:
Vi bor i København. *We live in Copenhagen.*
Familien Jørgensen skal bo her. *The Jørgensen family are going to stay here.*
- 13 **Vi har kun gjort, hvad vi selv har haft lyst til.** *It was a pleasure* (lit. *We have only done what we ourselves had pleasure in*).
At have lyst til means *to wish, want, look forward to doing*; **Jeg har lyst til en kop kaffe** *I'd like a cup of coffee.*

Hjemme hos Jensens *At the Jensens'*

- 14 **Hjemme hos Jensens** *At the Jensens'*
Jensens *the Jensens'* i.e. *Mr and Mrs Jensen, the Jensen family.*
 (No definite article is used in Danish.)
- 15 **Hvor har I det hyggeligt!** *How cosy it is in here* (lit. *How cosy you have it*)!
- 16 **Vi har også fået mere plads.** *We have also got more room.*
fået got from **at få** *to get*.
- 17 **Har I bygget til?** *Have you extended* (lit. *built onto*) (it)?
bygget is the past participle of **at bygge** *to build*.
- 18 **Ja, vi har indrettet to gæsteværelser.** *Yes, we've added on* (lit.

established) *two guest rooms.*

- 19 **Ja, det vil vi gerne.** *Yes, we would love to.*
gerne means *with pleasure* and is used in a number of ways:
så gerne (L2 N18) *certainly*
Vil du gerne hilse på hende? *Would you like to meet (lit. greet) her?*

I gæsteværelset *In the guest room*

- 20 **Vi har sat to senge herind.** *We have put two beds in here.*
sat past participle of **at sætte** *to put*.
- 21 **med plads til alt jeres tøj** *with room for all your clothes.*
tøj is singular and neuter in Danish; hence it is **alt jeres tøj** (N6a).
- 22 **Badeværelset er på den anden side af gangen.** *The bathroom is on the other side of the corridor.*
anden *other*. You have already seen **andre** *other* (plural):
den anden pige *the other girl*
det andet hus *the other house*
de andre piger *the other girls*
de andre huse *the other houses*
- 23 **Når I har pakket ud, skal vi spise.** *When you have unpacked* (lit. *packed out*) *we shall eat.*
- 24 **Jeg har lavet det meste i forvejen,** *I (have) made most of it in advance,*
 a **lavet** from **at lave** *to make, (here) cook*
 b **mest** *most*; **det meste** *most of it*. **meste** has an **-e** here because it is used with **det** (L1 N25b).
- 25 **og Lene har lovet at lave resten.** *And Lene has promised to make the rest.*
lovet from **at love** *to promise*.
- 26 **Kom med herover, Bjørn!** *Come over here with (me), Bjørn!*
med *with, i.e. with me* (L1 N36b).

I kammeret *In the room*

- 27 **og badeværelset er lige ved siden af.** *and the bathroom is just next to it.*
ved siden af lit. *at the side of (it)*—it is omitted, as the meaning is obvious from the context. Compare **Har du dine kufferter med?** *Have you got your cases with (you)?* and **Kom med herover!** *Come over here with (me)!*
- 28 **Det ser dejligt ud, og sikken en udsigt!** *It looks lovely, and what a view!*
ser . . . ud *look*; **Han ser godt ud** *he is good-looking*; **Det ser godt ud** *that looks fine.*

- 4** 29 Ja, er den ikke smuk? *Yes, isn't it beautiful?*
den refers to **udsigten** the view.

I dagligstuen *In the sitting-room*

- 30 Du ligner dig selv fra gamle dage. *You're the same as ever. (lit. you look like yourself from old days).*
31 Du har heller ikke forandret dig meget. *You haven't changed much either.*
at forandre sig to change; jeg har forandret mig *I have changed;*
du har ikke forandret dig *you haven't changed (lit. yourself)*
32 Har du meget at lave? *Have you (got) a lot to do? Have you got a lot of work?*
33 Ja, salget er gået fint i den senere tid. *Yes, sales (lit. the sale) have been fine lately.*
salget er gået The perfect of at gå, like at blive, is formed with at være, not at have (L3 N20a).
34 —Og hvad med dig? *And what about (lit. with) you?*
35 Jeg har været heldig at finde mange gode ting både her og i udlandet, *I've been lucky to find many good things both here and abroad,*
Note i udlandet abroad, in foreign countries (lit. in the outland).
36 og jeg har eksporteret en hel del. *And I have exported quite a lot.*
en hel del a good deal, quite a lot; en del is a part.

Lektion fem

Lesson five

What happens

In the kitchen Bjørn tries to help Lene, and he finishes laying the table. They have soup, rissoles and "rødgrød" for dinner and the Jørgensens enjoy having Danish food again. Lise asks Else for some recipes. After dinner the guests are shown Svend's new office. He has moved his office from the city to his home.

New words in this lesson

aldrig never	en kuvert (-er) place
arvet inherited	et køkken (-er) kitchen
at that	at lave mad cook
bare just	lettere easier
billigere cheaper	lidt a little
et bord (-e) table	at lægge lay
derovre over there	at lære teach
dygtige competent	(en) mad food
dækket laid	en middag (-e) dinner, lunch
efter from, after	en mormor (-mødre) grandmother
en farmor (-mødre) grandmother	et møbel (-bler) piece of furniture
femte fifth	netop exactly
forfriskende refreshing	nye new
forsøger try	om about
en frikadelle (-r) rissole	en opskrift (-er) recipe
fundet found	pragtfuld(t) gorgeous, splendid
færdig ready, finished	praktisk practical
en gaffel (-fler) fork	en reol (-er) bookcase, shelves
herhjemme here at home	et ribs (-) redcurrant
herligt delightful	en rødgrød a sort of dessert
et hindbær (-) raspberry	serveret served
husk remember	sidst last
en husleje (-r) rent	en ske (-er) spoon
en hverdag (-e) everyday	skrevet written
højre right	skrevet af copied
hørt heard	skulle should, ought to
i for	smager taste(s)
imens in the meantime	smagt tasted
ind i into	et solbær (-) blackcurrant
et kirsebær (-) cherry	som which
en kniv (-e) knife	en spisestue (-r) dining-room
et kontor (-er) office	steget risen

Middag

Dinner

står is arranged
 en suppe (-r) soup
 syntes thought, found
 (et) sølvtøj cutlery
 at tage bring
 en tallerken (-er) plate
 typisk typical(ly)
 en udlænding (-e) foreigner
 venstre left

vidunderlig wonderful
 et øjeblik (-ke) moment

lige netop that's it
 tak for mad! Thank you for the meal
 til højre on the right
 til sidst finally, lastly
 til venstre on the left

Notes

I køkkenet In the kitchen

- 1 Kan jeg hjælpe dig med noget? *Can I help you with anything?*
- 2 Jeg har maden færdig, *Dinner's ready* (lit. *I have the food ready*),
- 3 men du må gerne tage sølvtøjet ind. *but you may take in the cutlery.*
 må *may* can be confusing, because it also means *must* (L1 N11a);
 but *må* *gerne* always means *may*.
- 4 Husk at lægge knivene til højre, gafflerne til venstre og skeerne foran tallerkenerne. *Remember to lay the knives on the right, the forks on the left, and the spoons in front of the plates.*
- 5 Hvad med tallerkenerne? *What about the plates?*
 Hvad med is frequently used to draw attention to something you think has been overlooked, as here, or when suggesting something for somebody else's approval, or even as an invitation. *Hvad med* can be followed either by a noun or an infinitive with *at to*:
 Hvad med at se værelserne med det samme? *I suggest seeing the rooms straight away.*
 Hvad med et glas sherry? *May I offer you a glass of sherry?*
- 6 De står på bordet, og glassene står ved kuverterne. *They are on the table, and the glasses are by the plates* (lit. *the place-settings*).
 a kuvert *cover* (at table), *place-setting*, i.e. cutlery, plates and glasses for each person.
 Hvor mange kuverter er der? *How many places are there? How many places have been laid?*
- b You have seen the three different ways of forming the plural of nouns in Danish:
 i indefinite plural with no ending, definite plural ending in *-(e)ne*:
 et glas a glass *glasset the glass glas glasses glassene the glasses*
 Note: There is a double s in *glasset*, to keep the short a sound (L1 N37).
 ii indefinite plural ending in *-e*, definite plural ending in *-ene*:

en kniv a knife *kniven the knife knive knives knivene the knives*

et hus a house *huset the house huse houses husene the houses*

Note: There is a single s in *huset*, because u is long.

iii indefinite plural ending in *-(e)r*, definite plural ending in *-(e)rne*:

en gaffel a fork *gaffelen the fork gaffer forks gafflerne the forks*

en ske a spoon *skeen the spoon skeer spoons skeerne the spoons*

Note: With one or two exceptions, nouns ending in *-el*, *-en* and *-er* drop the e before the definite plural ending *-erne*.

Note: As there is no way of telling how a noun forms its plural, it is advisable to learn the plural (like the gender) of each new noun you learn. (You will find the plural endings of nouns given in brackets in the vocabularies.) For further details of how to form the plurals, see the grammatical appendix.

I spisestuen In the dining-room

- 7 Så er bordet dækket. *Then the table is laid* (lit. *covered*).
- 8 Middagen står på bordet. *Dinner is served* (lit. *The dinner is standing on the table*).
- 9 Først skal vi have suppe. Så frikadeller og til sidst rødgrød. *First we're having* (lit. *we shall have*) *soup. Then rissoles and finally "rødgrød"*.
rødgrød is a Danish dessert, a red fruit-juice thickened with potato-flour.
- 10 "Rødgrød med fløde", som alle danskere forsøger at lære udlændingene at sige. *"Rødgrød med fløde", which all Danes try to teach foreigners to say.*
 a Rødgrød med fløde *"Rødgrød" with cream* is a favourite Danish tongue-twister. Try to pronounce it well—many Danes will test you!
 b som means *who, which, whom, that*; here it refers to *rødgrød med fløde*.
 c at lære means both *to teach* and *to learn*:
 Jeg lærer dansk. *I am learning Danish.*
- 11 Lige netop! *That's it!* (lit. *Just exactly!*)

Ved bordet At the table

- 12 Det er herligt at få rigtig dansk mad igen. *It's lovely to have* (lit. *to get*) *real Danish food again.*
- 13 Hvor har du fundet opskriften? *Where did you get* (lit. *find*) *the recipe?*
- 14 Den har jeg arvet efter min mormor. *I got* (lit. *have inherited*) *it from* (lit. *after*) *my maternal grandmother.*

- 15 Den må jeg have skrevet af. *I must have a copy of that* (lit. *I must have it copied*).
 skrevet written from **at skrive** to write; to copy is **at skrive af** (lit. to write off).
- 16 Jeg har ikke smagt så gode frikadeller i mange år. *I haven't tasted such* (lit. *so*) *good rissoles for many years.*
- 17 Nej, den har jeg fra min farmor. *No, I got it* (lit. *I have it*) *from my paternal grandmother.*
 grandmother in Danish is **bedstemor**; but you can distinguish between **mormor** (N14) (lit. *mother's mother*), and **farmor**, lit. *father's mother*. Similarly *grandfather* can be **bedstefar**, **morfar** (i.e. *maternal grandfather*) or **farfar** (i.e. *paternal grandfather*).

Rødgrød "Rødgrød"

- 18 Nu har jeg hørt så meget om rødgrød, *Now I have heard so much about "rødgrød",*
 hørt heard from **at høre** to hear.
- 19 Det er dejligt forfriskende om sommeren. *It's nice (and) refreshing in summer.*
- 20 Hvad er der i? *What's in it* (lit. *What is there in*)?
 der is a useful word which is often used as the impersonal subject of a sentence. You will see more examples of it later in the course.
- 21 Der er både ribs, solbær, hindbær og kirsebær. *(There are) redcurrants, blackcurrants, raspberries and cherries.*
 både can mean *both* (L4 N35) but can also, as here, refer to more than two different elements. It is often used for emphasis.
- 22 Vil du have lidt mere? *Would you like* (lit. *will you have*) *a little more?*
 Note this useful way of offering things in Danish.

Tak for mad. *Thank you for the meal.*

- 23 Tak for mad. *Thank you for the meal.*
 It is customary for the Danes to thank the hostess for a meal. They also say **tak for kaffe** after coffee.
- 24 I er vel nok dygtige til at lave mad. *You are really good cooks.*
 (lit. *You are really competent to make food*).
- 25 Men jeg syntes, I skulle have noget typisk dansk i dag. *But I thought you should have something typically Danish today.*
 a syntes is the past tense of **at synes** to think, find, mean. In spoken Danish there is very little difference between **synes** and **syntes**.

- b skulle *should, ought to* is the past tense of the modal verb **at skulle** to have to (present tense, **skal**).
- c typisk *typical, typically.*
- 26 så kommer kaffen om et øjeblik. *then the coffee will be served* (lit. *is coming*) *in a moment.*

I Svends kontor *In Svend's office*

- 27 Vil I se mit nye kontor imens? *Would you like to see my new office in the meantime?*
- 28 Har du ikke mere kontor i byen? *Haven't you got your office in town any more?* (lit. *have you not more office in the town?*)
- 29 Nej, huslejerne i byen er steget så meget, *No, the rents in town have risen so much,*
 The perfect of **at stige** to rise, go up (past participle **steget**) is constructed with **er** (L3 N20a).
- 30 at det er blevet billigere for mig at have kontor herhjemme, *that it has become cheaper for me to have an office here at home,*
- 31 og det er også lettere. *and it's easier, too.*
 lettere *easier* from **let** *easy*. Making comparisons in Danish is easy, because it is so similar to English:
let *easy* **lettere** *easier* **lettest** *easiest* **det letteste** *the easiest* (L1 N25a);
billig *cheap* **billigere** *cheaper* **billigst** *cheapest* **det billigste** *the cheapest*. (Adjectives ending in **-ig** take **-st**, and not **-est**, in the superlative.)
- 32 Hvor har du indrettet dig smukt, *How beautifully you have set yourself up* (lit. *established yourself*),
 a smukt *beautifully*, from **smuk** *beautiful*. Adverbs in Danish are formed by adding **-t** (which corresponds to **-ly** in English) to the adjective: **billig** *cheap*, **billigt** *cheaply*.
- b at indrette means to establish, arrange, instal.
- 33 og møblerne står praktisk. *and the furniture is practically arranged* (lit. *the furniture stands practically*).
- a praktisk *practical, practically*; adjectives ending in **-isk** cannot take the ending **-t** when used as adverbs; so **typisk**, for example, means both *typical* and *typically*.
- b møblerne *the furniture* is plural in Danish; the singular is **et møbel** *a piece of furniture*.
- 34 Alle skabene herovre, og alle reolerne derovre. *All the cupboards over here, and all the shelves over there.*
- 35 Værsgo' og kom ind i dagligstuen. *Please, come into the sitting-room.*

6 Lektion seks

Lesson six

Efter middagen

After dinner

What happens

After dinner the Jensens and their guests chat over coffee, and they talk of Svend's beautiful new office and Else's Royal Copenhagen cups. They start to make plans for the days ahead, and Lene asks if she can borrow her father's car to take the Jørgensens to town the following day. In the evening the tired guests say goodnight and go up to bed.

New words in this lesson

ad along	et kaffestel (-) coffee service
af out of	en kunde (-r) customer
almindeligt common	køn pretty
bedre better	kønnere prettier
behagelig agreeable	en lejlighed (-er) (til) opportunity,
en beliggenhed (-er) site, position	chance (to)
bestemte mig made up my mind	læst read
blåt blue	at låne borrow
bruger use	man one
en butik (-ker) shop	meget very
da when	(en) morgenmad breakfast
derind in there	en nat (nætter) night
eller or	nogle some
end than	næste next
endelig finally, at last	omkring about
en fabrik (-ker) factory	op up
en farve (-r) colour	ordentligt carefully
fleste most	over past, after
flot smart, dashing	at parkere park
flytte move	passer suits
for . . . siden ago	en pavillon (-er) pavilion
godt well	en plan (-er) plan
grønt green	(et) porcelæn porcelain, china
grå grey	et posthus (-e) post office
gult yellow	på at
en havfrue (-er) mermaid	rød red
hvide white	at sende send
hvis if	sjette sixth
en impressionist (-er) impressionist	skønt lovely
inde i in	smukkere more beautiful
et inventar furniture and fittings	små small, little
en kaffekande (-r) coffee-pot	sort black

sov sleep
spændende exciting
et stel (-) set, service
at stå op get up
synes think, find
så saw
tilfreds contented
traf made, hit
trætte tired
tænkt mig thought
udmærket excellent(ly)

et valg (-) choice
videre further
virkelig really
at vække wake up
atten hundrede og halvtreds 1850
for . . . siden ago
ikke mere no longer, no more
i overmorgen the day after tomorrow
selv tak thank you
sende videre pass on

Notes

Ved kaffen Over coffee

- 1 Dit gamle kontor i byen var godt, men det nye er bedre. *Your old office in town was good, but the new one is better.*
det nye the new one (L3 N16a).
- 2 Ja, beliggenheden er god, udsigten her er smuk, *Yes, it is well situated (lit. the position is good), and the view here is beautiful,*
- 3 smukkere end inde i byen, *more beautiful than in (the) town,*
inde i means in, within, inside, generally with a more specific meaning than i.
- 4 og inventaret er både godt og smukt. *and the furniture and fittings are both good and beautiful.*
inventar covers both møbler furniture and fast inventar fittings.
- 5 og kunderne, der kommer herud, er også tilfredse. *and the customers, who come out here, are also contented.*
der means who, which, that, just as som (L5 N10), but, unlike som, it can only be used for the subject of the clause. In

Lene ser på Bjørn, ^{der}_{som} står bag ved forældrene *Lene looks at Bjørn, who is standing behind his (lit. the) parents*
both som and der can be used, because the person referred to (Bjørn) is the subject of the clause; but in
Lene ser på Bjørn, som hun ikke kender *Lene looks at Bjørn, whom she does not know*

only som can be used, as the person referred to, Bjørn, is not the same as the subject of the clause, Lene. Similarly, you can say kunderne, som kommer herud and kunderne, der kommer herud, because in both cases kunderne is the subject of the following clause; but you could

only say **huset, som jeg bor i** *the house in which I live*, because the subject of the clause (**jeg**) and the thing referred to (**huset**) are different.

- 6 Så det var et heldigt valg, jeg traf, da jeg bestemte mig for at flytte.
So it was a lucky choice I made (lit. I hit) when I made up my mind to move.

a traf, bestemte are the past tenses of **at træffe** and **at bestemme** (**sig**).
In Danish, as in English, there are two ways of forming the past tense of verbs. Those which have a vowel change in the past, such as **at træffe**, are called strong verbs:

at finde *find* jeg finder *I find* jeg fandt *I found* jeg har fundet *I have found*;

at ligge *to lie* jeg ligger *I lie* jeg lå *I lay* jeg har ligget *I have lain*.

Those which take the endings **-te** or **-(e)de** are called weak verbs:

at høre *to hear* jeg hører *I hear* jeg hørte *I heard* jeg har hørt *I have heard*;

at lære *to teach* jeg lærer *I teach* jeg lærte *I taught* jeg har lært *I have taught*.

The majority of weak verbs take **-(e)de** in the past tense, although some of the most frequently-used verbs are irregular or form the past with **-te**. For a list of the strong and irregular verbs, see the grammatical appendix.

- b You have now seen three different words meaning *when*; do not confuse them! The interrogative **hvornår** is always used in questions, while the conjunctions **når** and **da** are used in affirmative sentences—**når** in the future and in all durative tenses (i.e. when describing a continuous or repeated action) and **da** in the past:

Hvornår bestemte du dig til at flytte? Da huslejerne i byen steg sidste år.
When did you decide to move? When the rents in town went up last year.

Hvornår flytter du? Når jeg har indrettet kontoret. *When are you moving? When I've fixed up the office.*

Da jeg kom hjem til mor, lavede hun frikadeller. *When I went home to my mother she made rissoles.*

Når jeg kom hjem til mor, lavede hun altid frikadeller. *When I went (= used to go) home to my mother she always made (= used to make) rissoles.*

- c Note that **at bestemme sig** *to decide, make up one's mind* is reflexive.

d **at flytte** *to move (house)*

- 7 Vil du sende kaffekanden videre, Svend? *Will you pass on the coffee pot, Svend?*
sende videre *pass on* (lit. *send further*)

- 8 Mange tak, men det bruger vi ikke mere. *Many thanks, but we don't take (lit. use) it any more.*

ikke mere *no longer, no more.*

- 9 Det gør vi heller ikke. *Neither do we* (L4 N31).

- 10 Hvor er det kaffestel skønt. *How lovely this coffee set is.*

- 11 Det må være meget gammelt. *It must be very old.*

- 12 Ja, kopperne er behagelige at drikke af. *Yes, the cups are nice to drink out of.*

behagelig *pleasant, agreeable.*

- 13 Stellet er fra Den Kongelige Porcelainsfabrik. *The set (i.e. coffee set) comes (lit. is) from the Royal Porcelain Factory.*

Den Kongelige Porcelainsfabrik *The Royal Porcelain Factory* in Copenhagen (founded in 1775) is famous for its characteristic blue and white porcelain.

- 14 Jeg tror, det er fra omkring 1850 (atten hundrede og halvtreds). *I believe it dates from about 1850.*

a jeg tror *I think, I believe*

b det er fra omkring 1850 *it dates (lit. is) from about 1850.*

- 15 Jeg synes selv, de små kopper er kønnere end de store. *I myself think (that) the small cups are prettier than the big ones.*

a små *little, small* is the plural of lille:

en lille kop *a small cup* små kopper *small cups*

et lille hus *a little house* små huse *small houses*

b de store *i.e. the big ones* (L3 N16a).

Planer Plans

- 16 Har I planer for de næste dage? *Have you got (any) plans for the next (few) days?*

næste *next* always has the same form. Note the useful expression **de næste dage**.

- 17 Vi vil gerne til byen og se på butikker. *We would like (to go) to town and look at shops.*

a Vi vil *we will, we want to* (L3); vi vil gerne til byen *we would like to go to town*. In this idiomatic use of **vil**, the verb *go* is not translated; compare it with **Nu skal jeg hjem til Danmark** (L1) *Now I am going home to Denmark*, in which the Danish equivalent of *go* is also omitted after a modal verb.

b se på *look at*; at se means both *to look (at)* and *to see*.

- 18 Og jeg skal på posthuset. *And I've got to go to the post office.*
på *lit. on*; på posthuset means both *to* and *in* the post office.

- 19 Jeg vil gerne på Glyptoteket. *I'd like to go to the Glyptotek.*

The Ny Carlsberg Glyptotek is one of the best art collections in Denmark.

- 20 De har nogle fine impressionister, har jeg læst. *They have some fine Impressionists, (so) I've read.*
 a nogle is usually pronounced **nogen**.
 b har jeg læst *I have read* (lit. *have I read*); the word order is reversed in Danish because the sentence does not start with the subject (L1 N6a). The sentence could also be put **Jeg har læst, at de har nogle fine impressionister.** *I have read that they have some fine Impressionists.* Note the different word order **Jeg har læst**, and the use of **at that**.
- 21 Må jeg låne din bil, far? *May I borrow your car, Dad?*
 låne means both *borrow* and *lend*: **Må jeg låne den?** *May I borrow it?*
Lån mig den! *Lend it to me!*
- 22 Ja, hvis du kører ordentligt. *Yes, if you drive carefully.*
- 23 Jeg skal først bruge den i overmorgen. *I shall only need (lit. use) it the day after tomorrow.*
 først See L2 N11.
- 24 Men kør en spændende vej derind! *But take (lit. drive) a nice (lit. exciting) route in!*
 derind lit. *into there, i.e. into town.*
- 25 Ja, jeg har tænkt mig at køre ad Strandvejen og over Langelinie. *Yes, I thought of driving along Strandvejen and via Langelinie.*
 a jeg har tænkt mig *I (have) thought, I had in mind*—note that *to think* (like *to decide*—N6c) is reflexive.
 b Strandvejen is the coastal road out of Copenhagen.
 c Langelinie is a quayside park in Copenhagen.
- 26 Så får jeg endelig lejlighed til at se den lille havfrue. *Then at last I'll get a chance to see The Little Mermaid.*
 a The statue of The Little Mermaid at Langelinie, illustrating a story by Hans Christian Andersen, is very popular with tourists.
 b endelig *at last* is one of a few adjectives ending in **-ig** which do not take the ending **-t** when used as adverbs.
- 27 Hvor kan jeg parkere? *Where can I park?*
- 28 Lige ved Langeliniepavillonen! *Just by the Langelinie Pavilion!*
 Langeliniepavillonen is a well-known restaurant.

Biler Cars

- 29 Det er en flot gul farve, jeres bil har. *Your car is a smart yellow (lit. It is a smart yellow colour your car has).*
- 30 Ja, for nogle år siden var de fleste biler hvide eller grå. *Yes, some years ago most cars were white or grey.*

for . . . siden ago; for to dage siden two days ago

- 31 Sort er ikke så almindeligt til biler, men rødt, blå, grønt og gult ser man meget. *Black is not so common for cars, but one often (lit. much) sees red, blue, green and yellow.*
 a man is a pronoun used impersonally to mean *one, you*.
Man kan ikke gøre det. *You don't do that, that can't be done.*
I Danmark drikker man kaffe efter middagen. *In Denmark people drink (one drinks) coffee after lunch.*
I dag siger man du til alle sine venner. *Nowadays one says "du" to all one's friends.*
Man arbejder bedre i et smukt kontor. *You work better in a nice office.*
- b The colours in Danish:
 hvid hvidt hvide white grøn grønt grønne green
 sort sort sorte black rød rødt røde red
 gul gult gule yellow grå gråt grå grey
 blå blåt blå blue
 Blå and grå have the same forms in common gender and plural because adjectives ending in a vowel cannot take the ending **-e**.
 Adjectives ending in **-t** in the common gender do not take another **-t** in the neuter. The neuter forms of the adjectives (sort, etc.) are also used as nouns.

God nat Goodnight

- 32 Vi er lidt trætte efter rejsen, så vi vil gerne snart i seng. *We are a little tired after the journey, so we want to go to bed soon.*
 a trætt tired; the plural is trætte with double t to keep the short æ sound.
 b vi vil gerne snart i seng *we want to go to bed soon* (lit. *we will soon to bed*). This is another example of the idiomatic use of **vil gerne** in which *go* is not translated (N17a).
- 33 Ja tak, men hvornår står I op? *Yes, please (lit. thank you), but when are you getting up?*
 at stå to stand; at stå op to get up, rise, stand upright.
- 34 Lidt over syv. *A little after seven.*
 over in expressions of time means *past, after; to is i*. For example:
 Den er ti minutter over syv. *It is ten (minutes) past seven.*
 It is half past seven is Den er halv otte (lit. *it is half eight*).
- 35 Det passer os udmærket. *That suits us fine.*
- 36 Så kan vi spise morgenmad sammen. *Then we can have (lit. eat) breakfast together.*
 morgenmad breakfast (lit. *morning food*)

6 37 Og tusind tak for i dag. *And many (lit. a thousand) thanks for the day (lit. today).*

The Danes also say **Tak for i dag** or **tak for i aften** (*thanks for today and thanks for this evening*) when they leave a party.

38 Selv tak! *Thank you! Thank you, too!*

Selv tak is a common way of reciprocating thanks in Danish.

39 Og sov godt! *And sleep well!*

The neuter form of *good* is used as the adverb *well* (L5 N32a).

7 Lektion syv

Første dag i København

Lesson seven

The first day in Copenhagen

What happens

Lene takes Lise, Henrik and Bjørn to town in her father's car. Both Lise and Henrik spent their youth in the quarter they drive through. They go along the Sound with a view across to Sweden, admire the Little Mermaid, and part in the large square, Kongens Nytorv, from where Lise goes shopping, Henrik goes to the post office, and Bjørn drives on with Lene. In the post office Henrik buys airletters and stamps.

New words in this lesson

å at	dengang then, at that time
et aerogram (-mer) airletter	en død death
af off	eksisterede existed
en aften (aftner) evening	Europa Europe
altså so	et farvel goodbye
en barndom childhood	femoghalvfjerds seventy-five
et barndomshjem (-) childhood home	femogtyve twenty-five
bedst best	fordi because
bedsteforældre grandparents	at fortælle tell
at betale pay	fotograferede photographed
boede lived	et frimærke (-r) stamp
et brev (-e) letter	en færge (-r) ferry
en brochure (-r) brochure	før before
en båd (-e) boat	gange times

et gensyn (-) meeting again	halvfems ninety
en halvtredser (-e) 50-krone note	ham him
en have (-r) garden	herude out here
hurtigt quickly	kendte knew
koster costs	en krig (-e) war
et kvarter (-er) quarter	en kystvej (-e) coastal road
kørte drove	levede lived, were alive
(en) luftpost air mail	længe long
længere longer, further	lå lay
mindst at least	måtte might
ned, nede down	ni nine
nød enjoyed	også you know
om if	en postassistent (-er) post office clerk
en posttakst (-er) postage rate	et rat (-) steering wheel
revet torn	revet ned pulled down
en sejlbåd (-e) sailing boat	

seksogtyve twenty-six
en snes (-e) score
som as
spurgte asked
et sted (-er) place
stod stood
en strand (-e) beach
Sundet The Sound
Sverige Sweden
en synd (-er) pity
syvende seventh
en takst (-er) rate
til until
ti ten
tilbage back
en ungdom youth
at vide know
ville would
vist I think
en øre øre

alle steder everywhere (lit. in all places)
det betaler sig it pays
det er synd it's a pity
det øvrige the rest
en halv snes a dozen (lit. half a score)
i aften this evening
farvel så længe see you later
på gensyn see you later

Notes

Med Lene ved rattet *With Lene at the wheel*

- 1 Med Lene ved rattet *With Lene at the wheel*
et rat means a steering wheel; any other kind of wheel is **et hjul**:
Under bilen er der fire hjul. *Under the car there are four wheels.*
 - 2 Der er vel nok mange smukke haver her i kvarteret. *There are really many beautiful gardens in this part of town.*
her i kvarteret in this part of town, lit. here in the quarter; her i byen is in this town.
 - 3 Mine forældres hus lå også herude. *My parents' house was (lit. lay) out here, you know.*
- a lå lay, was lying past tense of at ligge to lie.
b også you know, you see, of course

- c **herude out here** You have already seen **herud (L4)**. There is a group of adverbs in Danish which have two forms, one ending in **-e** (such as **herude**), which indicate a state of affairs, or action in a particular place, and one with no ending (such as **herud**), which indicate movement in that direction:

ud	ude	out
ind	inde	in
ned	nede	down
op	oppe	up
over	ovre	over
hen	henne	away from here, towards, along
om	omme	round, about
frem	fremme	forward
bort	borte	away, off
hjem	hjemme	home

Jeg skal **hen** på posthuset. I'm going along to the post office.

Posthuset er **henne** på hjørnet. The post office is (over there) on the corner.

Bjørn og Lene kører **hjem** fra byen. Bjørn and Lene are driving home from town.

Bjørn og Lene bliver **hjemme** i dag. Bjørn and Lene are staying at home today.

Jeg går **op** på mit værelse. I'm going up to my bedroom.

Jeg er **oppe** på mit værelse. I'm up in my bedroom.

- 4 **Ja, og mit hjem, hvor jeg boede i min ungdom.** Yes, and my home, where I lived in my youth.
boede lived past tense of **at bo** to live.
- 5 **Hvor var dit barndomshjem, mor?** Where was your childhood home, Mum?
- a **barndom, ungdom** Many Danish nouns end in **-dom** and they are always common gender.
- b Two nouns are often joined by an **s**:
fødselsdag birthday (from **fødsel** + **dag** birth + day);
barndomshjem childhood home (from **barndom** + **hjem** childhood + home)
- 6 **Det lå derovre, men det er revet ned nu.** It was over there, but it has been (lit. is) pulled down now.
revet ned from **at rive ned** to pull down, tear down.
- 7 **Var det, mens din far og mor levede?** Was that while your father and mother were alive (lit. were living)?
levede lived, were living, from **at leve** to live, be alive
- 8 **Det er synd, du ikke kendte dine bedsteforældre.** It's a pity (lit. a sin) you didn't know your grandparents.
- a **kendte** from **at kende** to know.

- b Note the position of the adverb (**ikke**) in a subordinate clause, between the subject and the verb. In a main clause it would be **Du kendte ikke dine bedsteforældre**. Similarly **Han bruger aldrig sukker i kaffen**. *He never takes sugar in his coffee*, but **Du ved jo, at han aldrig bruger sukker i kaffen**. *Of course you know he never takes sugar in his coffee*.
It is advisable to study the position of the adverbs carefully.
- 9 **Nu kører vi ud på Strandvejen.** Now we're driving out onto Strandvejen (the Coastal Road).
- 10 **Der nede er Bellevue Strand.** Down there is Bellevue Strand. Bellevue Strand is a beach north of Copenhagen.
- 11 **Ja, den var ny i min barndom.** Yes, it was new in my childhood.
- 12 **Men Kystvejen her eksisterede ikke dengang.** But the Kystvej (Coastal Road) (here) didn't exist then.
- 13 **Den byggede de vist før krigen.** I think they built it before the war. **vist** I think; it also means *probably* (L3 N16).
- 14 **Kan I se Sverige derovre på den anden side af Sundet?** Can you see Sweden over there on the other side of the Sound?
Sundet (or more correctly, **Øresund**) is the channel between Denmark and Sweden.
- 15 **Ja, og se alle færgerne og sejlbådene!** Yes, and look at (lit. see) all the ferries and sailing-boats!

På Langelinie At Langelinie

- 16 **Sidst jeg var her, stod der mindst en halv snes udlændinge og fotograferede hende.** Last time I was here, at least a dozen foreigners were (standing) taking photographs of her.
- a **sidst** = **den sidste gang** last time.
- b **mindst** at least; **den mindste** the smallest
- c **stod . . . og fotograferede** were taking photographs (lit. stood and photographed) **At stå og . . . to stand and . . .** is often used to translate the English construction to be (do)ing:
De står og ser på færgerne. They are looking at the ferries.
- 17 **Ja, hende ser man alle steder.** Yes, you see her everywhere (lit. (in) all places).

I centrum In the centre

- 18 **Nu er vi på Kongens Nytorv.** Now we are in Kongens Nytorv. **Kongens Nytorv** (The King's New Market) is a big square in the centre of Copenhagen.

- 19 Her vil Henrik og jeg gerne af. *Henrik and I would like to get out* (lit. *Henrik and I will off*) here.
- 20 Tak, fordi du kørte os herind, Lene! *Thanks for driving us in* (lit. *Thanks, because you drove us in*), Lene!
- 21 Vi nød vel nok turen og vi kom hurtigt til byen. *We really enjoyed the trip and we got* (lit. *came*) to town quickly.
- 22 Bjørn spurgte vist, om han måtte køre med lidt længere. *I think Bjørn asked if he might drive a little farther on with you.*
- a måtte might the past tense of at måtte may, might.
- b køre med drive with, i.e. drive with you (L1 N36b).
- c længere farther from langt far.
- 23 Farvel så længe. *Goodbye—see you later.*
- 24 På gensyn i aften. *See you this evening.*
På gensyn see you later, so long.

På posthuset *At the post office*

- 25 Jeg vil gerne have nogle aerogrammer. *I'd like (to have) some airletters.*
- 26 Hvor mange vil De have? *How many do you want* (lit. *will you have*)?
- 27 Kan De fortælle mig, hvad et brev her til Danmark koster? *Can you tell me how much* (lit. *what*) *a letter to Denmark costs?*
- 28 Og til det øvrige Europa? *and to the rest of Europe?*
- 29 Jeg ville også gerne vide, hvad et brev til U.S.A. koster. *I would also like to know how much a letter to the U.S.A. costs.*
- 30 Til U.S.A. er det samme takst som til Europa. *It's the same rate to the U.S.A. as to Europe.*
samme som the same as
- 31 Men vil De ikke have en brochure? *But wouldn't you like a brochure?*
- 32 Jo, mange tak. *Yes, please.*
- 33 Det kan altså bedst betale sig at sende et aerogram. *So it pays* (lit. *So it can pay itself best*) *to send an airletter.*
- 34 Ja, det er billigere end et luftpostbrev. *Yes, it's cheaper than an air-mail letter.*
- 35 Så skal jeg have fem aerogrammer, *Then I'll have five airletters,*
- 36 10 90-øres (ti halvfemsøres) frimærker *10 90-øre stamps* øre (L2 N19).
- 37 og 5 frimærker à 1,20 kr. (en krone og tyve). *and five 1 krone 20 stamps.*
Note the different ways of expressing prices in Danish.
- 38 Værsgo', her er en halvtredser. *Here's a fifty-kroner note.*
- 39 Tak, og her er 26,25 (seksogtyve femogtyve) tilbage. *Thank you, and here is 26.25 change* (lit. *back*).

Lektion otte

Lesson eight

What happens

Lise goes shopping in a department store and buys two scarves, a sweater and slacks. Afterwards she goes to the ground floor to look at costume jewellery.

New words in this lesson

en afdeling (-er) department	mener mean, think
begge both	en modefarve (-r) fashionable colour
en bijouteriafdeling (-er) jewellery department	moderne modern
en bluse (-r) blouse	et mønster (-stre) pattern
bukser trousers	mønstrede patterned
en del (-e) some, a few	mørkeblå dark blue
desværre unfortunately	måske perhaps
dyrt expensive	en nederdel (-e) skirt
efter according to	nyeste newest, latest
egentlig actually	om round
ekspederer serve	otte eight
en ekspeditrice (-r) shop assistant	ottende eighth
ensfarvet plain-coloured	ovre over there
femogtres sixty-five	et par (-) pair, couple
fremhæver accentuates	passer til matches
at følge accompany	rigtigt really
en gave (-r) present, gift	rund round
grønlig greenish	sagtens easily
en halskæde (-r) necklace	silke silk
en hals (-e) neck	en skjortebluse (-r) shirt-blouse
italiensk Italian	slacks slacks
en kasse (-r) till, cash-desk	en smag taste, liking
en kjole (-r) dress	et stormagasin (-er) department store
en kjoleafdeling (-er) dress department	en stueetage (-r) ground floor
klæder suits	står til matches
kunne could	en sweater (-e) sweater
at kunne be able	sytten seventeen
kunne lide like	syvogtres sixty-seven
en kvalitet (-er) quality	trængte til needed
lad let	et tørklæde (-r) scarf
lange long	et udvalg (-) selection
lyseblå pale blue	undskyld excuse me
lysegrå light grey	ved know
lækker lovely	at vise show
	øjne eyes

Nyt tøj

New clothes

begge to both of them
Jeg kan godt lide I like

Jeg kunne tænke mig I could do with
tak selv thank you

Notes

I stormagasinet In the department store

- 1 Kan jeg hjælpe Dem, frue? *Can I help you, madam?*
- 2 Ja, kan De hjælpe mig med at finde et smukt tørklæde? *Yes, can you help me find a nice scarf?*
To help (somebody) with/do something is always at hjælpe med:
Vil du hjælpe mig med at lave kaffe? *Will you help me make coffee?*
- 3 Ja, vi har et stort udvalg i tørklæder. *Yes, we have a large selection of (lit. in) scarves.*
stor (stort, store) means big, large, great.
- 4 Havde De tænkt Dem et ensfarvet eller et mønstret? *Were you thinking of (lit. had you thought yourself) a plain or a patterned one?*
- 5 Jeg ved ikke rigtigt. *I don't really know.*
ved is the irregular present of at vide to know:
jeg ved I know; jeg vidste I knew; jeg har vidst I have known.
- 6 Jeg skal bruge det som gave. *I want it (lit. am going to use it) as a present.*
- 7 Her til højre har De mange i de nyeste modifarver, *Here on the right there are (lit. you have) many in the latest colours (lit. the newest fashion colours),*
- 8 og der til venstre en del mønstrede. *and there on the left some patterned ones.*
- 9 Hvor meget koster de? *How much do they cost?*
- 10 Er det ikke lidt dyrt? *Isn't that a bit expensive?*
- 11 Måske, men de er begge to af italiensk silke af god kvalitet. *Perhaps, but both of them (lit. both two) are (made) of good quality Italian silk.*
begge. Both in the sense of both of is always translated begge; in the sense of as well as it is både (note that både is always used with og):
Både de store (kopper) og de små kopper er af porcelæn. *Both the large (cups) and the small cups (i.e. the large cups as well as the small cups) are of porcelain.*
but
Begge kopperne er af porcelæn. *Both (of) the cups are of porcelain.*
(Remember that både can be used for more than two things.)

- 12 Nej, desværre. Men det får De i afdelingen lige om hjørnet. *Unfortunately not. But you (can) get them in the department just round the corner.*
om hjørnet round the corner; at the corner would be på hjørnet.

I kjoleafdelingen In the dress department

- 13 Undskyld, ekspederer De her, frøken? *Excuse me, but are you serving here, Miss?*
Undskyld (lit. Excuse) I am sorry, Excuse (me) can be used in all sorts of situations.
- 14 Ja, hvad kunne De tænke Dem? *Yes, what would you like?*
Note this idiomatic use of at kunne to be able.
- 15 Jeg skulle egentlig se på kjoler, men ville De ikke først vise mig et par bluser? *I was really going to look at dresses, but wouldn't you show me a couple of blouses first?*
 - a Jeg skulle I was going to Jeg skulle is the past tense of jeg skal:
Jeg skal se på kjoler I'm going to look at dresses;
Jeg skulle se på kjoler I was going to look at dresses.
 - b You have now seen the past tenses of several modal verbs in Danish: kunne (from kan), skulle (from skal), ville (from vil) and måtte (from må). In Danish, unlike English, however, the modal verbs also have an infinitive and a past participle:
hence
at kunne to be able to jeg kan I can jeg kunne I could jeg har kunnet I have been able to;
at skulle to have to, to be obliged to jeg skal I shall, I must jeg skulle I should, I had to jeg har skullet I have had to;
at ville to want to jeg vil I will jeg ville I would jeg har villet I have wanted to;
at måtte to be allowed to, to have to jeg må I may, I must jeg måtte I might, I had to jeg har måttet I have been allowed to, I have had to
- 16 Her skulle vi sagtens kunne finde en bluse efter Deres smag. *Here we should easily be able to find a blouse to (lit. after) your liking.*
- 17 Den lyseblå skjortebluse der kan jeg godt lide. *I like the pale blue shirt-blouse there.*
jeg kan (godt) lide I like Note this idiomatic use of at kunne.
- 18 Ja, den klæder Dem. Farven fremhæver Deres blå øjne. *Yes, it suits you. The colour accentuates your blue eyes.*
øjne eyes is the irregular plural of et øje an eye.
- 19 Ja, den må jeg have. *Yes, I must have that one.*
- 20 Har De set den mørkeblå sweater her med rund hals? *Have you seen*

this dark blue round-necked sweater (lit. the sweater with (the) round neck)?

- a mørke- dark and lyse- light often combine with the names of the colours:

mørkegul dark yellow, lysegul light yellow; mørkeblå dark blue, lyseblå light blue, etc; but lyserød is pink.

- b den . . . her (lit. the here) this This is den her or det her; these is de her. Sometimes, in more formal language, denne, dette and disse are used:

Den her suppe er vidunderlig (informal) or Denne suppe er vidunderlig (formal) This soup is wonderful.

Flyver det her fly til København? (informal) or Flyver dette fly til København? (formal) Is this aeroplane going to Copenhagen?

Er de her cigaretter dine? (informal) or Er disse cigaretter dine? (formal) Are these cigarettes yours?

Similarly, den her and den der (lit. the there) are that, de der those:

Den der suppe var vidunderlig. That soup was wonderful.

Flyver det der fly til København? Is that aeroplane going to Copenhagen?

Er de der cigaretter dine? Are those cigarettes yours?

- 21 Den står lige til Deres bluse. It matches your blouse exactly. står til match (lit. stand to)

- 22 Ja, den er lækker, men så må jeg også have en nederdel, der passer til. Yes, it's lovely, but then I must also have a skirt to go with (it).

- 23 Var det ikke noget med et par lange bukser? What about a pair of long trousers (slacks)?

Var det ikke noget med . . . What about . . .?, How would you like . . .? (lit. Wasn't it something about . . .).

- 24 Jo, det kunne måske være praktisk. Yes, that might be practical. kunne måske (lit. could perhaps) always means might.

- 25 Hvad mener De om de lysegrå slacks her? How do like (lit. What do you mean, i.e. what is your opinion of) these light grey slacks?

- 26 De står godt til blusen og sweateren. They go well with the blouse and the sweater.

står godt til match, go well with

- 27 Og de klæder Dem, fordi De er så slank. And they suit you because you are so slim.

- 28 Jeg trængte til noget nyt tøj. I needed some new clothes.

at trænge til is to need: Jeg trænger til at tale med dig I need to talk to you.

- 29 Det ville også se godt ud med en af de moderne halskæder. It would also look nice with one of the modern necklaces.

se . . . ud look (L4 N28)

- 30 Ja måske. Hvor får man dem? Yes, perhaps. Where do you (does one) get them?

man See L6 N31a.

- 31 I bijouteriafdelingen i stueetagen. In the jewellery department on the ground floor.

stueetagen the ground floor of a department store or public building; in a house it would be stuen: Vi bor i stuen We live on the ground floor. The first floor is første etage (in a public building) and første sal in a house.

- 32 Hvor skal jeg betale? Where shall I pay?

- 33 Ovre ved kasse 17 (sytten). Over there at till 17. en kasse till, cash desk.

- 34 Nu skal jeg følge Dem derover. I'll come over there with you now. at følge to follow, accompany; Må jeg følge dig hjem? May I see (accompany) you home?

- 35 Varerne får De lige ved siden af kassen. You get your goods just next to the cash desk.

- 36 Tak selv. Thank you, like selv tak (L6) is another way of reciprocating thanks in Danish.

Lektion ni

Lesson nine

What happens

In Svend's office the Jensens sit talking about their guests. They enjoy having them to stay, and Svend tells Else about his schooldays with Henrik. Meanwhile, Lise comes out of the department store, laden with shopping, and runs into her husband, who helps her carry her parcels. They take a bus home.

Jensens og Jørgensens

The Jensens and the Jørgensens

9 New words in this lesson

afskaffede did away with	morede sig enjoyed themselves
en alder (-dre) age	niende ninth
begyndte began	næ oh
en bemærkning (-er) remark	en pakke (-r) parcel
en bus (-ser) bus	en polet (-ter) token
da isn't it	pragtfuldt wonderful
de her these	ringede rang
den her this	en sans (-er) sense
en dør (-e) door	selv even
fik got	en siddeplads (-er) seat
flot attractive	sjov funny
en forretning (-er) business, shop	sket happened
følte felt	en skole (-r) school
gik went	slem bad
et gymnasium (-ier) grammar school	småpenge small change
en gæst (-er) guest	snakke chat, talk
hej hello, hi	en sporvogn (-e) tram
et held (-) luck	stemplet stamped
en humor humour	at stige om change (buses, etc.)
et humør temperament	at stole på trust
hun she	sur sour
en hundredkroneseddel (-dler) 100-kr.	travlt busy
note	ualmindelig unusual(ly)
kikkede looked	at veksle change (money), give change
en klasse (-r) class	yndig lovely
en konduktør (-er) driver	
lo laughed	
en lærer (-e) teacher	at have travlt be busy
løb ran	at komme sammen med see each other, date
mennesker people	

Notes

I Svends kontor In Svend's office

- Undskyld, har du travlt? *Excuse me, are you busy?*
har du travlt? *are you busy?* Note the idiomatic expression **at have travlt** to be (lit. to have) busy.
- Nej, kom bare ind! *No, (just) come in!*
- Er der sket noget? *Is anything the matter? (lit. Has anything happened?)*
der See L5 N20.
- Næ, jeg syntes bare, jeg trængte til at snakke lidt, *Oh, I just thought I wanted (lit. needed) to chat a little,*
jeg trængte til See L8 N28.

- og så har jeg lige lavet en kop kaffe. *and besides I've just made a cup of coffee.*
- Jeg tænkte, at du nok ville have en kop med. *I thought (that) you would probably like a cup with (me).*
- Hvad synes du om vores gæster? *How do you like (lit. What do you think about) our guests?*
- Jeg er glad for, at de kunne komme. *I am glad (that) they were able to come.*
- Det er nogle dejlige mennesker. *They are very nice people.*
- a Det er Note that Det (lit. that, it) can be used with both singular and plural nouns:
Det er et dejligt menneske. *He/she is a nice person.*
Det er nogle dejlige mennesker. *They are nice people.*
- b nogle dejlige mennesker *nice (lit. some nice) people*
Nogle is often used as a sort of indefinite article in the plural where it would not be used in English, usually after **at være** to be:
Deres døtre er blevet nogle store piger. *Their daughters have grown into (lit. have become) big girls.*
- c mennesker *people* is the plural of **et menneske** *man, person, human being*. **Menneskene** *the people* (note that the -r drops in the definite plural) is often used meaning *mankind*.
- Henrik var også min bedste ven, da vi gik i skole. *Of course Henrik was my best friend when we were at school.*
at gå i skole to go to school, be at school
- Man kunne altid stole på ham. *One could always trust him.*
- Han havde et pragtfuldt humør. *He was always in high spirits. (lit. He had a wonderful temperament.)*
- Hele klassen morede sig, *The whole class enjoyed themselves,*
- og selv de sureste lærere lo med, *and even the sternest teachers laughed with (us),*
sureste from **sur** *sour, crabby, stern*
- når han kom med sine sjove bemærkninger. *when he came (out) with his funny remarks.*
- Ja, jeg følte med det samme, at han havde sans for humor. *Yes, I felt at once that he had a sense of (lit. for) humour.*
at have sans for is to have a sense of, to have a feeling for (languages, music etc.)
- Kendte du Lise dengang? *Did you know Lise in those days?*
- Henrik begyndte at komme sammen med hende, da vi gik i gymnasiet. *Henrik started seeing her when we were at grammar school.*
- a at komme sammen med to see (someone of the opposite sex), go out with, date.

- b** A Danish **gymnasium** (*grammar school*) has three classes and takes students between the ages of 16 and 19. The definite form is **gymnasiet**; similarly other foreign words ending in **-um**: **et museum** *a museum*; **museet** *the museum*. The plural is with **-er**: **gymnasier**, **museer**.
- 19** **Hun så ualmindelig yndig ud dengang.** *She was extremely lovely then.* (lit. *She looked unusually lovely then.*)
When used as adverbs of degree (that is, quantifying the adjectives which follow them), words ending in **-ig** do not take the adverbial ending **-t**:
Hun var ualmindelig yndigt klædt. *She was unusually beautifully dressed*; but
Hun var ualmindeligt klædt. *She was unusually dressed.*
- 20** **Hun er da stadig en flot pige.** *But she's still an attractive woman, isn't she?*
a **da** is often used for emphasis without necessarily adding any meaning to the sentence; it can be translated several ways, or not at all, depending on the context. The emphasis here is on **stadig** *still* in opposition to **dengang** *then*.
Du husker da min mor *You remember my mother, don't you?*
Du har da købt frimærker? *You did buy stamps, didn't you?*
Hvad hedder han da? *What is his name?*
- b** **flot** means *smart, elegant, attractive*.
- 21** **Der er ikke mange, der er så slanke i hendes alder.** *There aren't many who are so slim at her age.*
Note the two different uses of **der** in this sentence!
- 22** **Nå, nu ringede det på døren.** *Oh, (now) there was a ring at the door.* (lit. *it rang at the door*).
Nu ringede det *There was a ring* (lit. *now it rang*)
Verbs are used impersonally more frequently in Danish than in English:
Det begynder at blive mørkt *It's beginning to get dark.*
- 23** **Jeg må ud og se, hvem det er.** *I must (go) out and see who it is.*
Note the omission of the verb of motion (*go*) with the modal verb **må**, just as with **skal** and **vil**.

På Kongens Nytorv *In Kongens Nytorv*

- 24** **Hej, Henrik!** *Hello, Henrik!*
Hej is a word which has only recently come into the Danish language; it is used mostly by young people.

- 25** **Kom lige herover og hjælp mig!** *Please, come over here and help me!*
- 26** **Det ser ud til, at det var godt, at vi løb ind i hinanden.** *It looks as if it was good that we ran into each other.*
at se ud to look (L4); **det ser ud til, at . . .** *it looks as if . . .*
- 27** **Jeg gik derinde i stormagasinet og kikkede på tøj.** *I've been round (here) in the department store and looked at clothes.*
herinde *in here* is used when everything happens in one place; **herind** is used when there is movement from one place to another (**L7 N3c**):
Han kom herind med mig. *He came in (here) with me.* (i.e. from another place)
Han køber nogle aerogrammer herinde. *He is buying some airletters in here.*
- 28** **Så så jeg så mange pæne ting.** *Then I saw so many nice things.*
Note the different meanings and pronunciations of **så**!
- 29** **—og købte den halve forretning.** *and bought half the shop.*
a **den halve forretning** *half the shop*, (lit. *the half shop*) because **halv** is an adjective.
b **forretning** literally means *business* but it is often used instead of **stormagasin** to mean *shop* or *store*. **Svend er forretningsmand** *Svend is a businessman.*
- 30** **Jeg fik kun det, der er i de her pakker.** *I only got what's in these parcels.*
a **det, der . . .** *what* (lit. *that which*)
b **de her** (lit. *the here*) *these* (**L8 N20b**).
- 31** **Skal vi ikke tage en bus hjem?** *Shall we take a bus home?*
- 32** **Jo, lad os det.** *Yes, let's.* (lit. *Yes, let us that*).
- 33** **Jeg ville gerne have kørt med sporvogn,** *I would have liked to go by tram,*
The Danes say **med sporvogn, bus, fly, bil, båd** *by* (lit. *with*) **tram, bus, plane, car, boat**. **To go by bus** (*car, boat*) is **at tage med bus** (**bil, båd**).
- 34** **men dem afskaffede de jo for nogle år siden.** *but, as you know, they did away with them some years ago.*
a **de** *they* is used impersonally in Danish as in English.
b The last Danish tram ran in 1973.
- 35** **Vi skal vist op foran.** *I think we must (go) up in front.*

I bussen *In the bus*

- 36** **Jeg vil gerne have to billetter.** *I'd like (to have) two tickets.*
- 37** **Har De kun en hundredkroneseddel?** *Have you only got a 100-kr. note?*

- 38 **Jeg har ikke så mange småpenge.** *I haven't got much (lit. so much) small change.*
 You know that **penge** money is plural in Danish; so **småpenge** small change (lit. small money) must be plural too.
- 39 **Vil De ikke have poletter?** *Wouldn't you like (some) tokens?*
poletter are tokens which are sold on the buses in lots of ten at slightly reduced prices, and which can be exchanged for tickets.
- 40 **Så kan jeg bedre veksle.** *Then I can (give you) change more easily (lit. better).*
- 41 **Jo, lad mig bare det.** *All right (lit. Yes, just let me (do) that).*
- 42 **Kan vi stige om på den her billet?** *Can we change with (lit. on) this ticket?*
at stige om to change (buses, for example)
- 43 **Ja, man kan køre i fem kvarter fra det øjeblik, den er stemplet.** *Yes, you can go for an hour and a quarter from the moment it's stamped.*
fem kvarter five quarters, i.e. an hour and a quarter.
- 44 **Henrik, der er to siddepladser her.** *Henrik, there are two seats here.*
- 45 **Det var da et held med alle de pakker, vi har.** *That really was (a piece of) luck, with all the parcels we've got.*

Lektion ti

Lene og Bjørn i byen

Lesson ten

Lene and Bjørn in town

What happens

Lene takes Bjørn to the Glyptotek in her father's car. They finally find a parking place and discuss parking problems in Copenhagen. They take their things and lock the car. We meet them again in the art collection, where they are discussing Gauguin and art and cultural life in general. Bjørn is very impressed by the collection. Then he invites Lene to have lunch with him in a nearby restaurant.

New words in this lesson

et billede (-r) picture

et brilleetui (-er) spectacle case

en brygger (-e) brewer

der which

en eftermiddag (-e) afternoon
 en egn (-e) region
 elsker love
 eneste single
 ethvert each
 folk people
 en fond foundation
 for too
 foretrækker prefers
 en frokost (-er) lunch
 gav gave
 grundlagde founded
 herfra from here
 at holde stop
 et hoved (-er) head
 hvert every, each
 imponeret impressed
 indre inner
 et indtryk (-) impression
 et kort (-) plan, map
 en kultur (-er) culture
 et kulturliv cultural life
 en kunstner (-e) artist
 en kunstsamling (-er) art collection
 en kunstschat (-te) art treasure
 en københavnner (-e) native of Copenhagen
 købte bought
 et land (-e) country
 langt far
 en litteratur (-er) literature
 en lomme (-r) pocket
 en lommebog (-bøger) notebook

at lægge put
 løber runs
 et maleri (-er) painting
 en morgen (-er) morning
 et museum (-er) museum
 en musik music
 en myldretid (-er) rush hour
 nogen somebody
 en nøgle (-r) key
 en oplevelse (-r) experience
 over of
 en parkeringsplads (-er) parking place
 et parkometer (-tre) parking meter
 en restaurant (-er) restaurant
 sager things
 en sal (-e) hall
 en samling (-er) collection
 en sidegade (-r) side street
 solgte sold
 et sprog (-) language
 stolt proud
 et stopforbud no waiting
 svært difficult
 et særpræg (-) special character
 en taske (-r) handbag
 tiende tenth
 vældig huge
 blandt andet (bl. a.) among other things
 det gælder om the point is, it is a question of
 i nærheden round here, nearby

Notes

I bilen In the car

- 1 **Nu er vi ved Glyptoteket. Nu gælder det om at finde en parkeringsplads.** *Here (lit. now) we are at the Glyptotek. Now we have to find somewhere to park (a parking place).*
 Note **det gælder om** it is a question of, the main thing is, the point is, we have to; **det gælder** means it is worth.
- 2 **Er det også så svært her i København?** *Is it also so difficult here in Copenhagen?*
- 3 **Ja, i den indre by må man kun parkere en time; men mange steder i nærheden er der parkometre.** *Yes, in the central part of the city (lit.*

inner city) you are only allowed to park for one hour. But in many places round here there are parking meters.

mange steder (in) many places

- 4 **I myldretiden er der stopforbud de fleste steder.** In the rush hours there is "No waiting" (in) most places.

a **en myldretid** rush hour(s), from **at myldre** to swarm, crowd and tid time.

b **stopforbud** (lit. stopping prohibition), i.e. No stopping, no waiting; similarly **parkeringsforbud** No parking.

- 5 **Hvornår er det myldretid her i byen?** When is the rush hour in this city?

- 6 **7-9 (fra syv til ni) om morgenen og 15³⁰-18⁰⁰ (fra halv fire til seks) om eftermiddagen.** From seven to nine in the morning, and from half past three to six in the afternoon.

For notes on how to tell the time in Danish, see L6 N34 and the grammatical appendix. The Danes say **den er halv fire** it's half past three (lit. it's half four); but if they are mentioning times from a timetable, they say **femten tredive** (fifteen thirty).

- 7 **Der er en plads der nede i sidegaden.** There is a space down there in the side street.

plads space, i.e. **parkeringsplads** (N1) **Plads** means open space, place, (vacant) seat, room, or square (as in **Rådhuspladsen** the Town Hall Square):

Er den plads fri? Is this seat free?

Er der plads til mine ting? Is there room for my things?

Værsgo' at tage plads! Please sit down.

But to take place is at **finde sted**.

- 8 **Der kan vi holde i tre timer.** We can stop there for three hours.
i **tre timer** for three hours; **i** is used with expressions of time meaning for:

Bilen holdt i sidegaden i tre timer. The car waited in the side street for three hours.

Henrik har ikke været i Danmark i tyve år. Henrik has not been to Denmark for twenty years.

- 9 **Jeg må lige have min taske med og mine nøgler og mit brilleetui.** I must just get my handbag, (my) keys, and (my) spectacle case.

a **at have . . . med** is to bring with, take:

Hvad skal du have med? What do you want to bring with you?

b Note that in this one sentence there are three Danish equivalents of my.

- 10 **Vil du have dit kort over København med?** Do you want (to have) your map of Copenhagen with (you)?

et kort is a map (et **Danmarkskort** a map of Denmark), as well as a plan, a playing card or a visiting card.

- 11 **Det har jeg her i lommen.** I've got it here in my pocket.

i lommen in my (lit. in the) pocket. Bjørn says in the (not my) pocket, since it is obvious that it is his own pocket he is talking about.

- 12 **Men her ligger din lommebog.** But here is your notebook.

lommebog (lit. pocket book) means a pocket diary or notebook.

- 13 **Så har vi alle vores sager.** Then we've got all our things.

a **vores** Although nowadays **vores**, **jeres** and **deres** have only one form, until fairly recently it was still normal to write three forms (**vor**, **vort** and **vore**) which are still found occasionally.

b **sager** things is used only in the plural; **en sag** means matter, case, lawsuit.

- 14 **Husk at lægge dine nøgler i tasken,** Remember to put your keys in your handbag,

Bjørn could also say **Husk at lægge nøglerne i tasken**, leaving out the possessive (**dine**) as in N11.

- 15 **så der ikke er nogen, der løber med jeres bil.** so that nobody runs (away) with your car (lit. so (that) there is not anybody who runs (away) with your car).

I Gauguinsalen på Glyptoteket In the Gauguin room at the Glyptotek

- 16 **I Gauguinsalen på Glyptoteket** In the Gauguin room in the Glyptotek
en sal is a hall, a very big room, much larger than you would find in a normal house or flat.

- 17 **Jeg er meget imponeret af jeres vældige samling af Gauguinbilleder.** I am very impressed by your huge collection of Gauguin pictures.

jeres your refers here to the Danes as a whole, or the people of Copenhagen. (In N15 **jeres** referred to Lene and her parents.)

- 18 **Du må huske på, at hans kone, Mette, var københavner.** Don't forget (lit. you must bear in mind) that his wife, Mette, was from Copenhagen.
at huske på means to bear in mind or to remind, while **at huske** means to remember:

Husk at købe frimærker Remember to buy stamps

Vil du huske mig på at købe frimærker? Will you remind me to buy stamps?

- 19 **Det er bl.a. (blandt andet) hendes samling, brygger Jacobsen har købt.** Jacobsen the brewer bought her collection, among other things.

Det er it was (lit. it is)—here again the present is used in Danish where we use the past in English (see L2 N4).

- 10** 20 Det var ham, der grundlagde Carlsberg, og Carlsbergfonden, der byggede Glyptoteket. *It was he who founded Carlsberg, and the Carlsberg Foundation which built the Glyptotek.*
The Carlsberg Foundation has provided funds for many works of art—including The Little Mermaid.
- 21 Fru Gauguin solgte sin samling til ham, og han gav sine malerier til museet. *Mrs Gauguin sold her collection to him, and he gave his paintings to the museum.*
sin means *his, her, its*, when referring to the subject of a sentence or clause (L1 N32b). The endings are the same as for the other singular possessives:
min mit mine *my*; din dit dine *your*; sin sit sine *his, her, its*.
- 22 Danmark må være glad for at have så store kunstskatte. *Denmark must be happy to have such great art treasures.*
- 23 Men jeg tror, hvert eneste land er stolt af sine kunstsamlinger, sine kunstnere, sin musik og sin litteratur og hele sit kulturliv. *But I think every (lit. every single) country is proud of its art collections, (its) artists, (its) music (and) (its) literature, and its whole cultural life.*
- a hver or enhver *every, each*. (The neuter is *hvert* or *ethvert*.)
b Note the word-order in *hele sit kulturliv its whole cultural life*.
- 24 Ja, og ethvert folk foretrækker sit sprog, sin kultur—og sin mad, *Yes, and every people prefers its (own) language, culture—and food,*
- 25 men jeg elsker at rejse i Europa, hvor hver egn har sit særpræg. *but I love to travel in Europe, where each region has its (own) special character.*

Uden for museet *In front of the museum*

- 26 Det var en skøn oplevelse! *That was a wonderful experience!*
- 27 Men man bliver helt træt i hovedet af så mange nye indtryk. *But so many new impressions are mentally exhausting. (lit. One gets quite tired in the head of so many new impressions).*
- a at blive + adjective is to get, grow, become: Han er blevet gammel *He's grown old.*
- b hovedet *the head, (here) one's head* (N11 and 14).
- 28 Skal vi ikke gå ud og spise frokost sammen? *Shall we go (out) and have (lit. eat) lunch together?*
- 29 Jeg kender en restaurant, der ikke ligger så langt herfra. *I know a restaurant not very far (lit. which doesn't lie very far) from here.*
ikke så . . . *not very . . . , not all that . . .*

- 10** 30 Der er hyggeligt, de har god mad, og så er den ikke for dyr. *It's cosy (there), they have good food, and then—it's not too expensive.*
- a de har god mad, de *they* is often used impersonally in Danish, as in English.
- b Don't be surprised in Denmark if you see a sign outside an inn saying *God mad*. It means *good food, excellent cuisine*.

Lektion elleve

Lesson eleven

What happens

Bjørn and Lene are in the restaurant. They sit by the window and have a typical Danish lunch—open sandwiches (smørrebrød), starting with herring and finishing up with cheese. They come out and see there is a dent in the back of the car; but the offender has left a note with his telephone number so that he can pay for the damage.

New words in this lesson

altid <i>always</i>	en kofanger (-e) <i>bumper</i>
bag i <i>at the back of</i>	en leverpostej (-er) <i>liver pâté</i>
bestemme <i>decide</i>	medregnet <i>included</i>
en betjening (-er) <i>service</i>	nej <i>gosh</i>
et biluheld (-) <i>car accident</i>	optaget <i>occupied</i>
en bule (-r) <i>dent</i>	en ost (-e) <i>cheese</i>
bojet <i>bent</i>	at passe på <i>be careful</i>
denne <i>this</i>	at prøve <i>try</i>
ellers <i>otherwise</i>	en påkørsel (-sler) <i>collision</i>
elleve <i>eleven</i>	en regning (-er) <i>bill</i>
ellefte <i>eleventh</i>	reserveret <i>reserved</i>
en fiskefilet (-ter) <i>fish fillet</i>	at ringe <i>'phone</i>
forhåbentlig <i>I hope</i>	en seddel (-ler) <i>note</i>
et forsikringsselskab (-er) <i>insurance company</i>	en selvrisiko (-er) <i>own risk premium</i>
en hilsen (-ner) <i>greeting</i>	en sild (-) <i>herring</i>
hjemmelavet <i>home-made</i>	en skade (-r) <i>damage</i>
iberegnet <i>included</i>	en skat (-ter) <i>tax</i>
	(et) smørrebrød <i>open sandwich</i>

en snaps (-e) schnapps
 et spisekort (-) menu
 en spisevane (-r) eating habit
 et stykke (-r) piece
 et stykke (smørrebrød) open sandwich
 en tjener (-e) waiter
 under under
 varer last
 venlig kind
 et vindue (-r) window

en vinduesvisker (-e) windscreen wiper
 en vogn (-e) car
 et værksted (-er) workshop
 ærgerligt annoying
 ærlig honest
 et øl beer

Hvor er det ærgerligt! What a nuisance!

lad os let's

Notes

På restaurant In a restaurant

- 1 **På restaurant.** In (a) restaurant.
- a **På** is often used of places to mean *in* or *at*:
 Man bor på hotel, arbejder på et kontor og går på gaden. *You stay at a hotel, work in an office and walk in the street.*
- b **På restaurant** In (a) restaurant In this title there is no article in Danish, because it is introducing a situation rather than referring to a specific restaurant.
- 2 **Det bord her ved vinduet ser godt ud.** *This table by the window looks fine.*
 Det . . . her *this* See L8 N20b.
- 3 **Det er forhåbentlig ikke optaget.** *I hope it is not occupied.*
- 4 **Tjener, er der reserveret her?** *Waiter, is this table reserved? (lit. Waiter, is it reserved here?)*
Tjener Note the Danish *tj* sound which is similar to the English *ch* sound (though not quite the same!)
- 5 **Nej, nu skal jeg komme med spisekortet.** *No, I'll bring (lit. come with) the menu now.*
 spisekortet *the menu* from **spise** *food* and **kortet** *the card* (L10 N10).
- 6 **Skal vi ikke have lidt smørrebrød?** *Shall we have some smørrebrød (open sandwiches)?*
- a **smørrebrød** comes from **smør** og **brød** *butter and bread* and is singular; so **lidt smørrebrød** literally means *a little bread and butter*. In fact **smørrebrød** consists of rye bread with butter and any one of a number of toppings—cheese, salad, fish, meat, etc. It is a meal in itself and is usually eaten for lunch, accompanied by beer and perhaps schnapps.
- b **et stykke smørrebrød** (literally *a piece of bread and butter*) i.e. *an open sandwich*; usually the Danes talk of **et stykke mad** or simply **et stykke**.

- 7 **Det får de fleste til frokost her i Danmark.** *That (is what) most people have for lunch here in Denmark.*
de fleste Note the use of the article. *People* is not translated.
- 8 **Jo, vil du ikke bestemme, hvad vi skal have?** *Yes, won't you decide what we'll have?*
- 9 **Jeg kender jo ikke de danske spisevaner.** *Of course I don't know the Danish eating habits.*
jo Compare the two meanings of **jo** in the last two sentences (L2 N15 and L1 N38).
- 10 **Så begynder vi med et stykke med sild.** *Then we'll start with a herring sandwich (lit. a piece with herring).*
 The Danes usually drink schnapps with the herring. **Sild** on **smørrebrød** is always pickled herring.
- 11 **Jeg kunne også tænke mig en fiskefilet.** *I'd like a fish fillet too.*
 a **Jeg kunne tænke mig** (L8 N4) lit. *I could imagine (for) myself*
 b **en fiskefilet** *a fish fillet* With **smørrebrød** a fish fillet is always **stegt rødspættefilet** *fried fillet of plaice*.
- 12 **Jeg ser, de har hjemmelavet leverpostej. Skal vi prøve den?** *I see they have home-made liver pâté. Shall we try that?*
- 13 **Det bliver for meget for mig.** *That will be (lit. become) too much for me.*
 a Note that words like **bliver** and **giver** gives are pronounced **blir** and **gir**.
 b **bliver** The Danish word has a wider use than its English equivalent *become*.
- 14 **Men vi må have ost til sidst, og så en øl og en snaps hver.** *But we must finish off with cheese (lit. lastly have cheese), and then a beer and a schnapps each.*
en øl is in fact short for **en flaske øl** *a bottle of beer*; **øl** is a neuter noun.
- 15 **Jeg skal bare passe på, hvis jeg skal køre vognen hjem.** *I must just be careful, if I am going to drive the car home.*
skal Note the two different translations, *must* and *going to*.
- 16 **Vi vil gerne have to stykker med sild, to med fiskefilet, et med leverpostej og to med ost.** *We'd like (to have) two herring sandwiches (lit. two sandwiches with herring), two fish fillet, one liver pâté and two cheese.*
- 17 **to sild, to fiskefilet,** *two herring (sandwiches), two fish fillet,*
to fiskefilet *fiskefilet* is in the singular because in fact it means **to stykker med fiskefilet**, **stykker** being understood; similarly **to kopper kaffe** = **to kaffe** *two cups of coffee*.
- 18 **Det skal ikke vare længe.** *It won't be (lit. last) long.*

11 Efter frokosten After (the) lunch

- 19 Tjener, må jeg betale? *The bill, please! (lit. Waiter, may I pay?)*
 20 Ja, her er Deres regning. *Yes, here is your bill.*
 21 Er det med betjening? *Is service included? (lit. is that with service?)*
 22 Ja, alt er iberegnet. *Yes, everything is included.*
 23 Her i landet er skat og betjening altid medregnet. *In this country tax and service are always included.*
 a **skat tax** As you will hear much of this word in Denmark, you had better learn it now! **en skat a tax skatten the tax skatter taxes skatterne the taxes.**
 But **en skat** also means *a treasure, or a sweetheart*; then it is **en skat, skatten, flere skatte, alle skattene.**
 b **medregnet** and **iberegnet** mean exactly the same: *included.*

Ved bilen At the car

- 24 Nej, har du set? *Gosh, look! (lit. Have you seen (that), have you seen what has happened?)*
 25 Der er en bule bag i din fars bil, og kofangeren er bøjet. *There's a dent in the back of your father's car, and the bumper has been (lit. is) bent.*
 a **bag i** There are many Danish expressions like this, consisting of an adverb + preposition. If they are placed before the noun, they are written as two words; but if they come at the end of a sentence they are written as one. For example:
Der er en bule bag i bilen. *There is a dent in the back of the car.*
Der er en bule bagi. *There is a dent in the back.*
Han står bag ved bilen. *He is standing behind the car.*
Han står bagved. *He is standing behind.*
 b **kofangeren** the bumper; lit. the cowcatcher!
 26 Ih, hvor er det ærgerligt, *Oh, what a nuisance,*
 27 og så for os, der ellers aldrig har biluheld. *and we who never have accidents! (lit. and then for us, who otherwise never have car accident).*
 28 Nu skal bilen på værksted et par dage, *Now the car will have to (lit. has to) go to the workshop for a couple of days,*
et par dage (for) a couple of days In a few phrases describing time and place the preposition can be omitted if not actually required for emphasis:
Bilen må holde her (i) to timer. *The car may wait here for two hours.*
(På) mange steder i nærheden er der parkometre. *In many places around here there are parking meters.*
 Compare **mange steder** in many places (L10 N3).

- 29 —og vi må betale selvrisiko til forsikringsselskabet. —and we have to pay own risk premium to the insurance company.
 In Denmark the insurance covers most of the expenses of an accident, but people still have to pay the first few hundred kroner—called **selvrisiko** (own risk premium)—of a claim.
 30 Se der sidder en seddel under vinduesviskeren. *Look, there's a note under the windscreen wiper.*
 a **der sidder there is** Danish is often more specific than English in describing the position of something or somebody:
Bilen står ved et parkometer. *The car is (lit. is standing) by a parking meter.*
Nøglen ligger i min lomme. *The key is (lit. is lying) in my pocket.*
 b **vinduesviskeren** Be careful: **vindue** is window, but the windscreen is **forruden** (lit. the front pane).
 31 Hvad står der på den? *What does it say? (lit. What stands there on it?)*
 32 Det er en hilsen til dig. *It's a message for you.*
hilsen message, greeting, can also be used in letters:
Venlig hilsen kind regards; **Kærlig hilsen** love.
 33 Der står: Undskyld påkørslen! *It says: Sorry about the collision!*
Der står it says, lit. there stands (on it)
Står (lit. is standing) is used of the written or printed word where we would use *is* in English:
Hvad står der i opskriften? *What does the recipe say? (N31a).*
 34 Ring til 09 37 96! *Phone 09 37 96!*
 Note the way you say phone numbers in Danish. Most Danish telephones are fully automatic.
 35 Det var da et held, at manden er ærlig. *It was really lucky (lit. a piece of luck) that the man is honest.*
 36 Nu betaler hans forsikring hele skaden. *Now his insurance will pay for all the damage.*
 37 Lad os så komme hjem! *Now let's get home!*
komme can often be translated *get*:
Hvordan kom du her hen? *How did you get here?*
 38 Så kan far ringe til denne Søren Møller og ordne det med ham. *Then Daddy can phone this Søren Møller and arrange it with him.*
 a **at telefonere** is to phone, but to phone somebody is **at ringe til nogen.**
 b **Søren Møller** All the names in the story are typically Danish. In Denmark you will find thousands of people called **Else, Lise, Lene, Henrik, Svend, Bjørn** and **Søren**, and even more called **Jensen, Jørgensen** and **Møller**.

Lesson twelve

Til Roskilde

Going to Roskilde

What happens

The weather has been fine all the time the Jørgensens have been in Denmark. Lise wants to get out and see the country while the good weather lasts. She, Bjørn and Henrik go to Roskilde, 20 miles west of Copenhagen. They take the local train to the central station and change there, and on the way out through the suburbs they talk about the growing city.

New words in this lesson

ad at, by	en perron (-er) platform
af sted off	en returbillet (-ter) return ticket
aller- by far, very	rigere richer
alligevel all the same	siden since
bagfra from behind	at skifte change
et billeshul (-ler) ticket office	en skov (-e) wood, forest
deroppe up there	en skyld sake
en dobbelbillet (-ter) return ticket	en station(-er) station
en domkirke (-r) cathedral	et S-tog (-) local train
dårlig bad	storartet excellent
egen, eget own	straks at once
flere more	et stykke (-r) bit
for because	sund healthy
en forbindelse (-r) connection	at tage go
en forstad (-stæder) suburb	et tog (-) train
gå walk	tolv twelve
hellere better, rather	tolvte twelfth
holder last	tom empty
en hovedbanegård (-e) central station	en trappe (-r) stair
hurtig quick	en tunnel (-er) tunnel
igennem through	et vejr weather
inden before	vestpå westwards
ingenting nothing	våde wet
en kilometer (-) kilometer	værste worst
kold cold	en årstid (-er) time of year, season
en kupé (-er) compartment	
en lejlighed (-er) flat	at blive nødt til have to
lunefuldt unpredictable	at have råd til afford
majdage days in May	må hellere had better
et net (-) network	ti-tolv ten or twelve
når reaches	

Notes

Hos Jensens At the Jensens'

- Det har været godt vejr, mens vi har været her. *The weather's been good while we've been here.*
Listen carefully to the difference in pronunciation between **vejr** and **været**!
- Men i dag har vi alligevel det bedste vejr, vi endnu har haft. *But all the same this is the nicest (best) weather we've had up to now.*
You already know **god**, **bedre**, **bedst** good, better, best; **godt vejr** good weather, **bedre vejr** better weather (note that the comparative does not take the ending -t), **bedste vejr** best weather.
- Men holder det? Det kan være lunefuldt på denne årstid. *But will it last? It can be unpredictable at this time of year.*
- Vi må nok hellere se at komme ud, inden det bliver dårligt vejr. *We had better see if we can (lit. see to) get out before the weather gets bad.*
hellere rather, better:
jeg ville hellere gå I would rather walk.
jeg må hellere gå nu I had better go now.
- Det værste, jeg ved, er våde og kolde majdage. *The worst thing I know is (the) wet cold days in May.*
Det værste the worst; worse is **værre**.
- Jeg vil gerne se domkirken. *I would like to see the cathedral.*
en kirke a church; **en domkirke** a cathedral.
- Jo, og Boserup Skov er allerdejlignst på denne tid af året. *Yes, and Boserup Wood is at its best (lit. very nicest) at this time of year.*
a **Boserup Skov** can also be written **Boserup skov**; similarly you can write **Roskilde Domkirke** or **Roskilde domkirke**.
b **aller-** is often added to a superlative for emphasis:
dejlig nice, **dejlignere** nicer, **dejlignst** nicest, **allerdejlignst** very nicest.
- Det er synd, at min bil er på værksted. *It's a pity (that) my car's in (the) workshop.*
- Det gør ingenting for vores skyld. *We don't mind (lit. It does nothing for our sakes).*
Det gør ingenting or **det gør ikke noget** are idiomatic expressions meaning *it doesn't matter, I/we don't mind*.
- Vi kan tage toget. *We can take the train.*
- Det er sundere, for så bliver vi nødt til at gå et stykke. *That will be (lit. is) healthier, because then we'll have to walk a bit.*
at blive nødt til is *to need*:
Jeg bliver nødt til at gå på posthuset nu. *I need to go to the post office now.*

- 12 I kan gå ned til stationen. Det tager kun ti-tolv minutter. *You can walk down to the station. It only takes ten or twelve minutes.*
- 13 Storartet. Lad os komme af sted straks! *Excellent. Let's go right away!*
 komme af sted *get* (lit. *come*) *off* af sted (lit. *off place*) means *to (be) off, get going*:
 Jeg må af sted. *I must be off.*
 De tager af sted til Amerika i morgen. *They're leaving for America tomorrow.*

På stationen *At the station*

- 14 Kan jeg få tre returbilletter til Roskilde? *May* (lit. *Can*) *I have three return tickets to Roskilde?*
- 15 Ja . . . Værsgo', her er tre dobbeltbilletter. *Yes, here are three return tickets.*
 dobbeltbillet means the same as returbillet, and is the word usually used on the railways for a return ticket.
- 16 Hvor langt skal vi køre med S-toget? *How far do we have to go on the S-train?*
 S-tog *S-trains* are the electric trains which run, partly underground, in Copenhagen and its suburbs.
- 17 Til Hovedbanegården. De kommer ind på perron 5 (fem) og skal skifte til perron 3 (tre). *To the Central Station. You come in on platform 5 and have to change to platform 3.*
- 18 Mange tak. Kan De give tilbage på hundrede kroner? *Thank you very much. Can you change 100 kroner?*

I S-toget *In the S-train*

- 19 Der er en plan over hele S-togsnettet deroppe. *There is a map of the whole train system up there.*
 S-togsnettet the (S-)train system *Net* means *net, network, system*.
- 20 Man kan se mange flere huse fra toget. *You can see many more houses from the train.*
 mange flere *many more*; *much more* is *meget mere* (you can't say *mange mere* or *meget flere*!); *mange flere huse* *many more houses*; *meget mere sukker* *much more sugar*.
- 21 De er måske smukkere set fra vejen; men jeg synes, det er sjovere at se dem bagfra. *Maybe they are prettier seen from the road, but I think it's funnier to see them from behind.*

- 22 Hvor er der bygget meget, siden jeg var her sidst! *How much has been built since the last time I was here!*
- 23 Dengang boede de allerfleste i lejligheder; *Then almost everybody* (lit. *most people by far*) *lived in flats*;
 de allerfleste *most*, i.e. *most people*; *allerfleste* comes from *aller-* (N7b) and *flest* the superlative of *mange*:
mange *many* *flere* *more* *flest* *most*; *mange penge* *much money* (remember *penge* is plural), *flere penge* *more money* *flest penge* *most money*.
- 24 men i dag må folk være rigere, når der er så mange, der har råd til at bo i eget hus. *but today people must be better off since so many can afford to live in houses* (lit. *a house*) *of their own*.
- a rigere *better off, richer*; from *rig* *rich, well off*; *rigere* *richer*; *rigest* *richest*.
- b at have råd til *to afford*:
 jeg har ikke råd til at få mit eget hus *I can't afford (to get) a house of my own*;
 Har vi råd til at tage en taxa hjem? *Can we afford to take a taxi home?*
- c mange . . . har råd til at bo i eget hus *Note that hus* is singular, as each person spoken of will (presumably) only have one house.
- d egen, eget, egne *own*: vores egen bil *our own car*; mit eget hus *my own house*; vores egne børn *our own children*.

På Hovedbanegården *At the Central Station*

- 25 Skal vi op ad trapperne og ned igen til den anden perron? *Must we* (go) *up the stairs and down again to the other platform?*
ad used with words like *ud* *out* *ned* *down* and *op* *up* indicates the direction of movement:
 Jeg går op ad trappen. *I go up the stairs.*
 Jeg går ned ad trappen. *I go down the stairs.*
 Jeg går hen ad perronen. *I go along the platform.*
- 26 Nej, der er en tunnel med forbindelse til alle perronerne. *No, there is a tunnel with connections to all the platforms.*
- 27 Det er lettere at gå igennem den. *It's easier to go through there* (lit. *that*).
igennem means exactly the same as *gennem*: *through*.
- 28 Jeg tror, vi må gå lidt hurtigere. *I think we must hurry* (lit. *walk a little faster*).
hurtig(t) *quick(ly)*, *fast*; *hurtigere* *faster*; *hurtigst* *fastest*.
- 29 Der er kun tre minutter, til toget går. *It is only three minutes till the train leaves.*

12 I toget In the train

- 30 Hovedbanegården ligner sig selv. *The Central Station's the same as ever.*
at ligne sig selv See L4 N30.
- 31 Den er også fra 1912. *Of course it dates from 1912.*
a også See L7 N3b.
b 1912 (the date) is pronounced **nitten hundrede og tolv** *nineteen hundred and twelve*; but **1912 kroner** would be **et tusind ni hundrede og tolv kroner** *one thousand nine hundred and twelve kroner*.
- 32 Men togene er mere moderne. *But the trains are more modern.*
moderne is one of the few adjectives which do not take **-er** and **-est** in the comparative and superlative:
moderne *modern*; **mere moderne** *more modern*; **mest moderne** *most modern*.
- 33 Her er en tom kupé. Skal vi sætte os derind? *Here's an empty compartment. Shall we sit in there?*
sætte os See L3 N25.
- 34 Der er mange forstæder med høje huse her ude vestpå. *There are many suburbs with tall houses out here to the west.*
forstæder A few Danish nouns change their vowels in the plural:
en forstad *a suburb*, to **forstæder** *two suburbs*; **en far** *a father*, to **fædre** *two fathers*; **en mor** *a mother*, to **mødre** *two mothers*.
- 35 København når snart helt til Roskilde. *Copenhagen will soon stretch all the way (out) to Roskilde.*
- 36 31 km (enogtredive kilometer). *31 kilometres.*
Most units of measurement in Danish are the same in the singular and plural: **et gram** *one gram* to **gram** *two grams*; **en meter** *one metre* to **meter** *two metres*. The only exception is units of time: **et minut** *one minute*, to **minutter** *two minutes*; **en time** *an hour*, to **timer** *two hours*.

Lektion tretten

Lesson thirteen

What happens

Bjørn and his parents have seen the old cathedral in Roskilde. They have a look at the market, and then decide to walk to Boserup Wood. They delight in all the wild flowers there, and Henrik tells his son about the Danish seasons.

New words in this lesson

allerede already	en kongebegravelse (-r) royal tomb
altsammen all of it	marts March
en anemone (-r) anemone	masser af lots of
april April	en mur (-e) wall
august August	en måned (-er) month
at bade swim	nogensinde ever
et barn (børn) child	november November
en blomst (-er) flower	oktober October
en bøgeskov (-e) beech wood	at opleve experience
december December	en plante (-r) plant
en digter (-e) poet	poetisk poetic
et efterår (-) autumn	regner rains
en efterårsmåned (-er) autumn month	ret rather
februar February	en sang (-e) song
en fjord (-e) fjord	september September
forfærdelige terrible	sjældent seldom
forstår understand	skrækkelig terribly, awful(ly)
et forår (-) spring	slet ikke not at all
en forårsblomst (-er) spring flower	en sne snow
friske fresh	en sol (-e) sun
en grad (-er) degree	en sommer (somre) summer
en grønsag (-er) vegetable	et spir (-) spire
helt all the way	stønner moan
hen down	at tabe sig lose weight
hvor when	tit often
* høje tall, high	en torvedag (-e) market-day
interessante interesting	tretten thirteen
en jul (-e) Christmas	trettende thirteenth
juli July	et tårn (-e) tower
juni June	uden for outside
et kalkmaleri (-er) fresco	et vand (-e) water
et kirketårn (-e) church tower	varm warm
en kodriver (-e) primrose	en varme warmth, heat

13

I Roskilde og Boserup

In Roskilde and Boserup

en verden (-er) world
 en vinter (-tre) winter
 ældre older, elder
 ældst oldest, eldest
 øser pour

at blive forkølet catch cold

at gå i vandet swim, go in, go
 swimming
 det hele all of it
 hvor er der mange . . . what a lot of . . .
 oven i købet besides
 som regel as a rule
 somme tider sometimes
 varmt nok warm enough

Notes

Uden for Roskilde domkirke In front of Roskilde cathedral

- 1 Hvor er de spir høje! *What tall spires (lit. How tall those spires are)!*
 høj means high, tall.
- 2 Mon ikke det er de højeste kirketårne i landet? *I wonder if they aren't the tallest church towers in the country?*
 højeste Like all adjectives, the superlative takes an -e after the definite article:
 den dejligste pige the nicest girl
 det bedste vejr the best weather
 de højeste tårne the tallest towers.
- 3 Det er den smukkeste og mest interessante kirke, jeg nogensinde har set. *It's the most beautiful and interesting church I've ever seen.*
 mest interessante Most Danes say mere interessant more interesting and mest interessante most interesting, as they are easier to pronounce than interessantere and interessantest; but both forms are quite correct. Most adjectives can be compared both ways.
- 4 Alle de gamle kalkmalerier, og de endnu ældre kongebegravelser! *All the old frescoes, and the royal tombs, which are even older!*
 a gamle, ældre old, older (or elder) is an irregular comparison as in English; oldest (or eldest) is ældste.
 b kalkmalerier frescoes (lit. chalk paintings) There are thousands of mediaeval frescoes in Danish churches.
 c kongebegravelser royal tombs, from konge king and begravelse grave, tomb, vault. Normally a grave is en grav; but monumental tombs, such as those found in churches, are called begravelser. Begravelse also means funeral.
- 5 Og murene er det ældste af det hele. *And the walls are the oldest of all.*
- 6 Ja, det var godt, du fik set det allsammen. *It was good (that) you managed to see all of it.*
 du fik set you managed to see (lit. you got seen).
 at få + past participle = to manage (to do):

Når Lene får fundet en parkeringsplads, skal hun og Bjørn på Glyptoteket. *When Lene manages to find a parking place, she and Bjørn will go to the Glyptotek.*

Har far fået ringet til Søren Møller? *Has Dad managed to phone Søren Møller?*

- 7 Nej, har I set! Det er torvedag. Skal vi ikke kikke på det? *Oh, look (lit. have you seen), it's market day! Shall we (go and) have a look?*
- 8 Hvor er der mange friske grønsager! *What a lot of fresh vegetables!*
 Hvor er der mange . . . *What a lot of . . . , How many . . .*
- 9 —og de dejligste blomster og planter, man kan tænke sig. —and the most beautiful flowers and plants imaginable (lit. you can imagine).
- 10 Skal vi gå helt ud til Boserup? *Have we got to walk all the way out to Boserup?*
 at gå ud is to go out (into the country); ud is used when talking of going from town to country, and ind when going from the country to the town:
 Du tager ud på landet *You go out into the country.*
 Skal vi tage ind til byen? *Shall we go into town?*
- 11 Vi har da tit gået meget længere. *We have often walked much further.*
 Vi har gået *We have walked.* When the perfect of at gå is formed with har (as here), it means walk; if formed with er, however, it means depart, leave:
 Han er gået. *He has left.* Han har gået 4 km. *He has walked 4 kilometres.*
- 12 Så kunne du måske oven i købet tabe dig lidt! *Besides, then you might lose a little weight!*
 oven i købet besides, moreover.

I Boserup Skov In Boserup Wood

- 13 Jeg har aldrig set bøgeskoven smukkere end den er i dag. *I've never seen the beech wood more beautiful than it is today.*
- 14 —og kodrivere, og så mange forårsblomster, som jeg slet ikke kan huske navnet på. —and primroses, and so many spring flowers I can't remember the names of.
- 15 Og hvor er fjorden blå! *And how blue the fjord is!*
- 16 Kan man ikke gå i vandet? *Can you go in (lit. Can't you go into the water)?*
- 17 Nej, vandet er for koldt endnu. *No, the water is still too cold.*
- 18 Først i juni bliver det varmt nok til at bade, men det er bedst at gå i vandet i juli og august. *It only gets warm enough to swim in June, but it's best to go swimming in July and August.*

- 19 Hvornår er det rigtig sommer i Danmark? *When's the real summer in Denmark?*
- 20 Som regel i juni, juli og august. *As a rule in June, July and August.*
- 21 Nogle år regner det en del. *Some years it rains a great deal.*
- 22 Andre år er der masser af sol. *Other years there is a lot of sun.*
masser af sol *lots of sun*. You could also say **en masse sol** (but not **en masse af sol**).
- 23 Når det bliver 24–25° (fire-femogtyve grader), stønner folk af varme. *When it gets (to) 24 or 25 degrees, people will moan with the heat.*
The Jørgensens are talking, of course, of degrees Centigrade (about 75° F.).
- 24 Somme tider. Men oktober, november og december er de typiske efterårsmåneder. *Sometimes. But October, November and December are the real (lit. typical) autumn months.*
- 25 Det er ret sjældent, men det er ret koldt. *It's quite rare, but it's rather cold.*
ret *rather, really, fairly, very.*
- 26 Den ene dag øser det ned, den næste er der frost og sne, og alle bliver forkølede. *One day it pours down, and the next there's frost and snow and everybody catches cold.*
at blive forkølet *to catch a cold.*
- 27 Men i april er foråret altid på vej. *But in April spring is always on its way,*
The seasons are **foråret, sommeren, efteråret og vinteren** (*the*) **spring** (*lit. foreyear*), **summer, autumn** (*lit. afteryear*) and **winter**. (Note the genders.)
- 28 og kan man opleve noget dejligere end den danske bøgeskov i maj?
and can you see anything lovelier than the Danish beech wood in May?
opleve *experience, witness, see*
- 29 Nej, nu forstår jeg bedre alle de danske sange, I har lært mig som barn. *Oh, now I (can) understand (lit. I understand better) all the Danish songs you taught me as a child.*
- 30 Digterne er så glade for det danske forår, at de synes, det er det skønneste og mest vidunderlige i verden. *The poets are so happy about the Danish spring that they think it is the most beautiful and wonderful (thing) in the world.*
- a **det skønneste og mest vidunderlige** *the most beautiful and (most) wonderful (thing)*—here you see the two different ways of comparing the adjectives.
- b **verden** *the world* is irregular: **en verden** is *a world*, **verden** *the world*, **verdener** *worlds*, **verdenerne** *the worlds*.
- 31 Nu bliver I mere poetiske end digterne. *Now you are getting more poetic than the poets.*

mere poetiske Adjectives ending in **-isk** do not take the endings **-ere** and **-est**, but must have **mere** and **mest** before them:

poetisk *poetical*, **mere poetisk** *more poetical*, **mest poetisk** *most poetical*;

praktisk *practical* **mere praktisk** *more practical* **mest praktisk** *most practical*.

Note the similarity with the comparison of **moderne** (L12 N32).

- 32 Men jeg vil hen og have kaffe. *But I want (to go) and have (some) coffee.*

Hen is an adverb which indicates horizontal movement and is used to emphasize the direction of something. It can be translated various ways (*up to, over, along*) or not at all:

Kom hen til mig *Come up to me*

Gå hen til døren *Go to the door.*

Lektion fjorten

Lesson fourteen

What happens

In the centre of Copenhagen Bjørn and Lene hear music and see that the royal guard is marching past. They talk about seeing the Queen, and follow the soldiers to Amalienborg Palace to see the changing of the guard. The same evening they go to the Tivoli gardens, and see the pantomime and circus artistes.

New words in this lesson

alene *alone*
en artist (-er) *artiste, performer*
en balkon (-er) *balcony*
en balletforestilling (-er) *ballet performance*
bare *only*
en bjørneskindshue (-r) *bearskin*
bortset fra *apart from*

børn *children*
et dannebrogslag (-) *Dannebrog (Danish flag)*
en dronning (-er) *queen*
et engagement (-er) *engagement*
enkelt *single*
ens *identical*
europæisk *European*

De unge i København

The young people in Copenhagen

- en fader (fædre) father
fantastisk fantastic
festligt festive
et fjols (-er) fool
fjorten fourteen
fjortende fourteenth
forbi past
en forestilling (-er) performance
forskellig different
fyldt full
et fyrværkeri fireworks
følge efter follow
en gallauniform (-er) dress uniform
en garde (-r) guard
en garder (-e) guardsman
en herre (-r) gentleman
hertil here
en hofdame (-r) lady-in-waiting
hænder hands
at høre hear, listen to
klokken o'clock
en komedie (-r) comedy
en koncertsal (-e) concert hall
kongelig royal
en kopi (-er) copy
læner sig op leans
mindre smaller
mindste smallest
en moder (mødre) mother
et nummer (numre) number
nødvendigt necessary
et palæ (-er) palace

- et pantomimeteater (-tre) pantomime theatre
passer på look after, guard
en plæne (-r) lawn
en plads (-er) square
et politi police
præcis precisely
en raket (-ter) rocket
rundt om round about
råber cry
en skulder (-re) shoulder
en slotsplads (-er) palace square
spejler sig are reflected
spiller play
stiller op line up
en sø (-er) lake
tro true
et træ (-er) tree
trækker op change (the guard)
en turist (-er) tourist
en uge (-r) week
en vagtafløsning (-er) changing of the guard
en vagtparade (-r) marching of the guard
ægte genuine
at høre hjemme belong
at komme til get a chance to, happen to
at råbe hurra cheer
hvad er det for . . . ? what sort of . . . ?
klokken tolv (at) twelve o'clock
når som helst any time
to gange twice

Notes

I Københavns centrum In the centre of Copenhagen

- 1 Hvad er det for en musik, man kan høre? *What's that music (you can hear)?*
Hvad . . . for means *what? which? what sort of?*
Hvad er det for et hus? *What house is that?*
Hvad er det for noget? *What is that? What sort of thing is that?*
- 2 Det er garden, der trækker op. *It's the guard marching.*
 - a at trække is a strong verb: jeg trækker, jeg trak, jeg har trukket.
 - b trækker op *march* is used about the royal guard marching from its barracks to Amalienborg castle for the changing of the guard.

- 3 Nu kommer de her forbi. *Now they are coming past.*
- 4 Nej, hvor ser de flotte ud, i gallauniformer og med bjørneskindshuer. *Gosh, how dashing they look in (their) dress uniforms and bearskins!*
en bjørneskindshue *bearskin* from en bjørn *bear* et skind *skin, fur* and en hue *cap*.
- 5 Vi kan følge efter dem til Amalienborg. *We can follow them to Amalienborg.*
 - a at følge efter means *to follow at a short distance or after a short interval*; at følge (L8) is *to accompany or go with somebody*.
 - b Amalienborg Some people say **Amalienborg Slot**, although both **borg** and **slot** mean *castle*.
- 6 Kan vi så komme til at se dronningen? *Is there any chance we'll see the Queen?*
at komme til at is *to chance to, to happen to*:
Jeg kom til at gå ud foran en bil. *I happened to step out in front of a car.*
- 7 Hende kan du møde på gaden når som helst. *You can meet her in the street any time.*
- 8 Hun går tit alene med en hofdame eller med en af den kongelige familie. *She often walks alone with a lady in waiting or a member of (lit. one of) the royal family.*
- 9 Passer politiet ikke på hende? *Don't the police guard her?*

På Amalienborg slotsplads In Amalienborg Square

- 10 Nu er klokken tolv (12). *Now it's twelve o'clock.*
klokken *clock, o'clock*; klokken syv (at) *seven o'clock*
Hvad er klokken? *What time is it?*
En klokke can also mean *a bell*.
- 11 Så kan vi se vagtafløsningen. *Then we can see the changing of the guard.*
- 12 Sikke mange børn, her er—og turister. *What a lot of children there are—and tourists.*
 - a sikke mange means the same as *hvor er der mange what a lot of*:
Hvor er der mange anemoner or **Sikke mange anemoner** *What a lot of anemones!*
 - b børn *children* is an irregular word: et barn is *a child*, barnet *the child*, børn *children*, børnene *the children*.
- 13 Det er der altid på denne tid af dagen. *There always are at this time of day.*
- 14 Hvor er det smukt med de fire ens palæer, og med garderne, der stiller

op foran! *How beautiful it is with the four identical palaces, and the guardsmen lining up in front of them!*

The four rococo palaces (built in the 1750s) round the octagonal Amalienborg slotsplads (Amalienborg Square) look very much alike.

- 15 Så skulle du se pladsen på dronningens fødselsdag, når der er fyldt med mennesker. *You should see the square on the Queen's birthday, when it's full of people.*

fyldt med full of, crowded with.

- 16 Alle børnene har dannebrogsglag i hænderne, og præcis kl. 12 kommer dronningen ud på balkonen, og alle råber hurra. *All the children have flags in their hands, and at twelve o'clock exactly the Queen comes out on to the balcony and they all cheer.*

a Dannebrog is the name of the Danish flag, which is red with a white cross.

b ud på balkonen out on to the balcony; she is on the balcony would be hun er ude på balkonen (L7 N3c).

c The abbreviation kl. (for klokken) is used only when immediately followed by the number; in all other cases it is written out in full:

Hvad er klokken/Hvor mange er klokken? *What's the time?*

Klokken er tolv. *It's twelve o'clock.*

Klokken er mange. *It's late (lit. The clock is many).*

Samme aften i Tivoli *The same evening in the Tivoli gardens*

- 17 Samme aften i Tivoli *The same evening in the Tivoli gardens*

The Tivoli gardens were founded in 1843 and are a favourite meeting place for the inhabitants of Copenhagen. There are various amusements there, including a concert hall and the pantomime theatre.

- 18 Det er festligt at se pantomimeteatret, som far og mor har fortalt så meget om. *It's fun to see the Pantomime Theatre which Dad and Mum have spoken so much about.*

a festligt festive, funny

b fortalt from the verb at fortælle to tell: jeg fortæller I tell, jeg fortalte I told, jeg har fortalt I have told.

- 19 Ja, det er vist det eneste sted i verden, man endnu kan se den ægte, gamle italienske komedie med Pjerrot, Harlekin og Columbine. *Yes, it is probably the only place in the world where you can still see the genuine old Italian comedy with Pierrot, Harlequin and Columbine.*
den gamle italienske komedie It is the *commedia dell'arte* which is played in the Tivoli.

- 20 Se den herre og dame der med deres tre små børn. *Look at that lady and gentleman (lit. gentleman and lady) there with their three little children.*

små See L6 N15a.

- 21 Hvor er de søde! Den lille pige, der står foran moderen, den lidt mindre dreng, der læner sig op ad faderen, og det mindste barn, der sidder på faderens skuldre. *How sweet they are—the little girl standing in front of the mother, the boy, (who is) a bit smaller, leaning against the father, and the smallest child, sitting on the father's shoulders.*

a far father and mor mother have older forms fader and moder (pronounced as far and mor respectively). Henrik er Bjørns far and Henrik er Bjørns fader are equally correct. These older forms survive in the definite and plural:

en far or en fader a father; faderen the father; fædre fathers; fædrene the fathers.

en mor or en moder a mother; moderen the mother; mødre mothers; mødrene the mothers.

b The comparative and superlative of lille and små are irregular:

lille } small mindre smaller mindst smallest.
små }

c Note the plurals of en skulder and et teater: skuldre and teatre.

- 22 Senere på aftenen er her balletforestilling. *Later on in the evening there is a ballet performance (here).*

a Senere (from sen late) later, later on.

b her and der are both used as subjects in the same way as the English there. Her is used, as in this sentence, of something near the speaker.

- 23 Det må vi se; men jeg tror plæneforestillingen begynder nu. *We must see that, but I think the lawn performance is starting now.*
Once there was a lawn where the circus artistes performed; now there is an open-air theatre.

Ved Plænen *At the lawn*

- 24 De artister er nogle af de bedste, jeg har set. *Those performers are some of the best I've seen.*

a artister performers, artistes.

b De artister i.e. de artister der those performers; der is implied by the context.

- 25 Det er også kun de allerbedste, der får engagement her i Tivoli. *Of course, it's only the very best who get engagements in the Tivoli.*

a også of course, you see (L12 N31a).

- b de allerbedste, der får engagement *the very best who get engagements* (lit. (an) engagement) (L12 N24c).
- 26 De kommer hertil fra det meste af Europa. *They come here from most of Europe.*
 hertil (lit. *hereto*) There are many words in Danish formed by adding a preposition to *her* (like *hereafter*, *herewith*, etc. in English). They cannot always be translated exactly:
 Kom herhen. *Come here.*
 Roskilde ligger 31 kilometer herfra. *Roskilde is 31 kilometres from here.*
- 27 Jeg tror også, der er turister fra de fleste europæiske lande. *I think there are tourists from most European countries too.*
- 28 Jeg har hørt fantastisk mange forskellige sprog. *I've heard a fantastic lot of (lit. fantastically many) different languages.*
- 29 Skal vi gå ind i koncertsalen og høre et enkelt nummer? *Shall we go into the concert hall and listen to a piece of music (lit. a single number)?*
- 30 Ja, bare de spiller H. C. Lumbye! *Yes, I hope (lit. if only) they'll play H. C. Lumbye.*
 Lumbye was a Danish composer (sometimes called the Danish Strauss) who often played in the Tivoli in the first years after it opened in 1843.
- 31 Han hører jo hjemme i Tivoli. *Of course he belongs to the Tivoli.*
 at høre is to *hear*; but when used with certain words (*hjemme, sammen, hen, til*) it means *to belong*:
 Lumbye og Tivoli hører sammen. *Lumbye and Tivoli belong together.*
 Der hører snaps til en rigtig frokost. *No lunch is right without a schnapps (lit. There belongs schnapps to a real lunch).*
- 32 Men der har vi jo vagtparaden. *But there's the guard marching.*
- 33 Dit fjols! Det er da Tivoligarden. *Silly! It's the Tivoli guard.*
 a Bjørn has mistaken the Tivoli guard for the Royal guard, which he saw earlier.
 b Dit fjols! is not as strong as *you fool!* Din idiot would be much stronger.
- 34 Ja, bortset fra, at det er drenge. *Yes, apart from (the fact) that they are boys.*
 In Danish a preposition (*fra, til, for*, etc.) often precedes a subordinate clause with *at*:
 Jeg er glad for, at vi er flyttet. *I'm glad we've moved.*
 Jeg glæder mig til, (at) du kommer i morgen. *I'm looking forward to your coming tomorrow.*

- 35 Det er der to gange om ugen. *They have them twice a week.*
 to gange twice (lit. *two times*); en gang om ugen once a week (lit. *one time in the week*); to gange om måneden twice a month; tre gange om året three times a year.
- 36 Hvor ser det smukt ud, når raketterne spejler sig i søen. *How beautiful it looks when the rockets are reflected in the lake.*
 spejler sig are reflected from et spejl a mirror; jeg spejler mig is I look into the mirror; et spejlbillede a reflection; but et spejlæg is a fried egg!
- 37 Ja, med alle træerne og blomsterne rundt om. *Yes, with all the trees and flowers round about.*

Lektion femten

Lesson fifteen

What happens

Henrik hires a car in Copenhagen. The Jørgensens are going to Jutland for a fortnight, and have borrowed a tent and camping equipment from Svend. They go to Korsør, where they get the ferry to Nyborg; then they visit the island of Funen, and finally decide to look for a camping site.

New words in this lesson

en altertavle (-r) altarpiece	et campingudstyr camping equipment
bakkede hilly	en chance (-r) chance
en befolkning (-er) population	cirka (ca.) about
begynder begin	da well, but
en billettør (-er) ticket collector	femten fifteen
et bilmærke (-r) make of car	femtende fifteenth
en biludlejning (-er) car hire agency	en forsikring (-er) insurance
bøndergårde farms	frem forward(s)
en bro (-er) bridge	et førerbevis (-er) driving licence
camperer camp	gotisk gothic
et campingpas (-) camping permit	en halvdel (-e) half
en campingplads (-er) camping site	håber hope

På tur i Danmark

Touring in Denmark

	Jylland Jutland
	kloge wise, clever
en	kontrakt (-er) contract
en	landsby (-er) village
et	landskab (-er) countryside, landscape
at	leje rent, hire
	Lillebælt The Little Belt
en	liste (-r) list
	lovede promised
en	midte (-r) middle
et	mærke (-r) make
	nykalkede freshly whitewashed
	overalt everywhere
en	passager (-er) passenger
en	pris (-er) price
	sagde said
en	skoleferie (-r) school holiday
	skriver write

et	telt (-e) tent
en	tid (-er) period
	tyvende twentieth
et	udstyr equipment
	velholdt well-kept
	vidste knew
	værd worth

	at have brug for want, need
	at køre frem move forward
	at have ret be right
	at have ret til be entitled to
	at regne med to reckon, count on,
	expect
	det vil sige (d.v.s.) i.e., that is
	fjorten dage two weeks
	første klasser first class

Notes

I biludlejningen At the car-hire agency

- 1 Vi vil gerne leje en bil. *We'd like to hire a car.*
- 2 Vi har en hel del forskellige mærker. Hvad havde De tænkt Dem?
We have many different makes. What were you thinking of?
- 3 Hvordan ligger det med priserne? *How do the prices go?*
- 4 Her er en liste over alle bilmærkerne. *Here's a list of all the makes*
(lit. makes of car).
- 5 Naturligvis er det billigere, hvis De lejer den i længere tid. *Of course*
it works out (lit. is) *cheaper if you rent it for a longer period.*
- 6 Vi regner med at tage en tur til Jylland i godt 14 (fjorten) dage. *We*
reckon on touring Jutland (lit. taking a tour to Jutland) *for a good two*
weeks.
14 (fjorten dage) is always used for two weeks, a fortnight; but 8 dage
one week.
- 7 Jeg har allerede fundet lige det, vi har brug for. *I've already found*
just what we want.
at have brug for is to need:
Jeg har brug for hjælp *I need help.*
- 8 Her er virkelig god plads til bagagen. *There's really plenty of room*
(lit. good room) *here for the luggage.*
- 9 Vi kan få vores kufferter og teltet og alt det andet campingudstyr, vi
har lånt af Svend og Else, til at ligge der. *We can get our suitcases*
and the tent, and all the other camping equipment we borrowed from
Svend and Else, into it (lit. to lie there).

- 10 Jeg tror, min søde og kloge kone har ret—som altid. *I think my sweet*
and clever wife is right—as always.
at have ret to be (lit. to have) right; to be wrong is at have uret:
Du har altid ret *You are always right; Hun har aldrig uret She is never*
wrong.
- 11 Vi tager den her. Hvad med forsikringen? *We'll take this one. What*
about the insurance?
- 12 Den kommer med på regningen. *It's included in* (lit. comes with) *the*
bill.
- 13 Nu skal jeg skrive kontrakten. *Now I'll write* (out) *the contract.*
- 14 Må jeg låne Deres førerbevis? *May I have* (lit. borrow) *your driving*
licence?
et førerbevis *a driving licence* is the official word, which would be used
by the police or an agency; most people say **et kørekort**.

Ved færgen i Korsør At the ferry in Korsør

- 15 Der var 107 km (hundrede og syv kilometer) til Korsør. *It was 107*
kilometres to Korsør.
- 16 Nu håber jeg, der er plads på færgen. *Now I hope there's room on the*
ferry.
- 17 De lovede, at der altid var plads midt i ugen, inden sommerferien
begynder. *They said* (lit. promised) *that there was always room*
midweek before the summer holidays begin.
 - a midt i (or i midten af) in the middle of; midt i ugen midweek, in the
middle of the week.
 - b ferie holidays; Jeg har ferie to gange om året. *I have holidays twice a*
year. A day off is en fridag; Jeg har to fridage midt i næste uge I'm
having two days off in the middle of next week. A bank holiday is en
helligdag (lit. a holy day).
- 18 Hvornår begynder skoleferien? *When do the school holidays begin?*
- 19 Lene sagde, at man begynder omkring den 20. (tyvende) juni, og så har
man 7 (syv) uger, d.v.s. (det vil sige) til ca. (cirka) den 12. (tolvte)
august. *Lene said they begin* (lit. one begins) *about the 20th June, and*
go on for seven weeks (lit. and then one has seven weeks), *in other words*
until about the 12th August.
 - a tyvende, tolvte twentieth, twelfth. The endings -(e)nde and -te
correspond to -th in English; for a full list of the ordinals in Danish,
see the grammatical appendix.
 - b d.v.s. (short for det vil sige) that means, i.e., that is to say, in other
words.

- 20 I den tid er halvdelen af Danmarks befolkning på ferie. *During that time half the population of Denmark is on holiday.*
en halvdel a half; i min halvdel af huset in my half of the house.
 Fractions are formed by adding **-del** to the ordinal; so **en tredjedel** one third; **en fjerdedel a quarter; en femtedel one fifth**, etc.
- 21 Det er da godt, at så mange tager til udlandet. Så er der chance for, at vi får plads. *Well, it's a good thing so many people go abroad—then there's a chance we'll get a place.*
da (here) well, but
- 22 Nu skal vi køre frem, far! *We must move forward now, Dad!*
at køre frem move (in a car), **go ahead, drive forward**; the expression is used when moving after waiting (in a queue or at traffic lights, for example).
- 23 Vi skal have en dobbeltbillet til Nyborg. Er der plads på færgen? *We'd like a return ticket to Nyborg. Is there room on the ferry?*
- 24 Masser. En bil og 2 passagerer? *Plenty. One car and two passengers?*
Masser See L13 N22.

I Jylland In Jutland

- 25 Fyn var virkelig værd at se. *Funen was really worth seeing (lit. to see).*
a Fyn Funen is the second largest island in Denmark. It is connected to Sjælland (Zealand) by a ferry which goes from Nyborg to Korsør.
b værd worth; Hvor meget er den værd? How much is it worth?
- 26 Odense med den gotiske domkirke og altertavle og H. C. Andersens hus, *Odense with its (lit. the) Gothic cathedral and altarpiece and Hans Christian Andersen's house,*
a den gotiske refers both to **domkirke** and **altertavle**, as they are the same gender.
b H. C. Andersens hus is a museum in the building where Andersen is said to have been born in 1805.
- 27 og det bakkede landskab med alle de velholdte landsbyer og med de nykalkede bøndergårde. *and the hilly countryside, with all the beautifully kept villages and freshly whitewashed farmhouses.*
a bakket hilly from **en bakke a hill**.
b velholdt well-kept from **at holde to keep, hold; (han holder he keeps, han holdt he kept, han har holdt he has kept)**.
c en landsby is a village; but **han er her fra byen** means both **he is from this town** and **he is from this village**.
d nykalket from **ny new(ly)** and **kalket whitewashed**.
e In bøndergårde farms both parts of the word are in the plural: **bønder** (the plural of **en bonde a farmer**) and **gårde** (the plural of **en**

gård a farm). Nowadays many people say **bondegårde** instead of **bøndergårde**.

- 28 Jeg vidste slet ikke, at der var to broer over Lillebælt. *I had no idea (lit. I didn't know at all) that there were two bridges across the Little Belt.*
 The Little Belt is the passage between Jutland and Funen from the Baltic to the Kattegat.
- 29 Vi har da gode ingeniører og fine veje her i landet. *We have good engineers and fine roads in this country, haven't we?*
- 30 Bjørn, vil du ikke se i bogen, om der er en 1 kl. (første klasses) campingplads her i nærheden. *Bjørn, won't you look at the book and see if there is a first class camping site near here (lit. here nearby)?*
- 31 Du skal forbi Fredericia, *You have to (go) past Fredericia,*
 32 så er der ikke så langt. *then it isn't so far.*
- 33 Når vi kommer frem, skal vi købe et campingpas. *When we get there (lit. forwards) we have to buy a camping permit.*
et campingpas camping permit Most people buy camping permits from motoring organisations, but they can also be bought at most good camping sites.
- 34 Det koster ikke ret meget, *It doesn't cost very much.*
- 35 og så har vi ret til at campere overalt i Danmark. *and then we can (lit. we are entitled to) camp anywhere in Denmark.*
at have ret til means to be entitled to; at have ret (N10) is to be right.

16 Lektion seksten

Lesson sixteen

I Århus ti dage senere

In Århus ten days later

What happens

Ten days later the Jørgensens arrive in Århus. They have stayed at some excellent camping sites en route, but now they decide to spend a few nights in a hotel because the weather is bad. They put the car in the yard and settle down in their rooms.

New words in this lesson

afslappende relaxing	et regnvejr rainy weather
afvekslende changing, a change	en sal (-e) floor
anstrengende strenuous	selv om even if
et bad (-e) bath(room)	seksten sixteen
beliggende situated	sekstende sixteenth
et brusebad (-e) shower	skrevne written
bærer carry	slæber are slaving
camping camping	strålende bright
charmerende charming	talt spoken
et dobbeltværelse (-r) double room	ukendt unknown
en engel (-gle) angel	vel well
et enkeltværelse (-r) single room	velgennemtænkte well planned
fandtes existed	velindrettede well-established
en gård (-e) yard	venlig friendly
henrivende lovely	vigtig important
et hotel (-ler) hotel	virker seem
indtil until	ønsker wishes, wants
knap (nok) hardly	øsende pouring
ledige vacant	
nedrevne demolished	at have lyst til like, fancy
nybyggede newly-built	at tage ind på put up at
næsten almost	i nat tonight
en organisation (-er) organization	nok så ever so
passende suitable	på grund af because of
en portier (-er) receptionist, porter	så ... som as ... as
en reception (-er) reception (desk)	

Notes

Camping Camping

1 Århus 10 (ti) dage senere In Århus ten days later

16

a Århus is often written Aarhus, because Å and å were formerly written Aa and aa.

b Århus is the second largest city in Denmark after Copenhagen. It is a very old town with a cathedral, an open-air museum called Den Gamle By, and a university.

2 Jeg har været imponeret af de mange velindrettede campingpladser med deres venlige mennesker. I've been very impressed by the many well-established camping sites with their friendly people.

3 Ja, og de nybyggede cafeterier og brusebade. Yes, and the newly-built cafeterias and showers.

4 Og den velgennemtænkte organisation. And good organisation.

a imponeret, velindrettede, nybyggede, velgennemtænkte Past participles in Danish take the same endings as adjectives. (Note that the final -et of the past participle becomes -ed when the adjectival ending -e is added: velindrettet but de velindrettede campingpladser.)

b velgennemtænkt well planned (lit. well thought through)

5 Vi var spændt på, om de var forandrede, siden vi var unge. We wondered whether they'd changed since we were young.

a at være spændt på to wonder, be eager (to know)

b vi var spændt på we were eager The plural form of spændt is spændte, but many people nowadays use spændt both in the singular and plural; so you could say both vi var spændt or vi var spændte.

6 Dengang fandtes der jo knap nok nogen, At that time there were hardly any,

fandtes was (were) found, from the past tense fandt found; similarly findes is found, from at finde to find. The passive in Danish is formed by adding -s to the present or past tense. For example:

Brygger Jacobsen købte malerierne. Jacobsen the brewer bought the paintings. but

Malerierne købtes af brygger Jacobsen. The paintings were bought by Jacobsen the brewer.

De kan få halskæderne i bijouteriafdelingen. You can get the necklaces in the jewellery department. but

Halskæderne fås i bijouteriafdelingen. The necklaces are to be got in the jewellery department.

7 og de, der var, virkede hjemmelavede, selv om de var velholdte. and those which did exist (lit. which were) were very unsophisticated (lit. seemed homemade), even though they were well looked after.

8 For mig var det spændende at møde så mange ukendte mennesker.

For me it was exciting to meet so many strangers.

ukendte mennesker strangers (lit. unknown people)

9 Det talte sprog er så forskelligt fra det læste og skrevne, The spoken

language is so different from the way it is read and written, (lit. the spoken language is so different from the read and written one), skrevne is the definite form of skreven written. Some strong verbs have two past participles, one ending in -t, which is used verbally as a participle, and the other ending in -n, which is used adjectivally:

Bjørn har fundet nøglen. Bjørn has found the key.

Fundne nøgler kan man sjældent bruge. The keys you find (lit. found keys) are seldom of any use.

- 10 **og hjemme hører jeg jo næsten aldrig dansk.** and at home I hardly ever (lit. almost never) hear Danish, as you know.

- 11 **Indtil i dag har vejret været strålende:** Up to now (lit. until today) the weather's been glorious;

strålende glorious, dazzling, bright, from the verb **at stråle** to shine; the ending -ende corresponds to -ing in English.

- 12 **men i det øsende regnvejr, vi har nu, har jeg ikke lyst til at bo på campingplads i nat,** but in this pouring rain I don't fancy staying at a camp site tonight.

a **øsende** pouring, from **øse** to pour; **det øser ned** it's pouring down.

b **regnvejr** means rain, rainy weather.

c **jeg har ikke lyst til** I don't like; **at have lyst til** is to like, enjoy, fancy. **Jeg har ikke lyst til at bo i en stor by.** I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

- 13 **selv om den er nok så charmerende og vel beliggende.** even if it is ever so charming and well situated.

På hotel Going to the hotel

- 14 **Jeg skulle lige til at foreslå, at vi tog ind på et hotel et par nætter.** I was just going to suggest that we should put up at a hotel (for) a couple of nights.

a **skulle . . . tog** Note that both verbs are in the same tense:

Han sagde, at han kom. He said he was coming.

Han siger, at han kommer. He says he is coming.

b **et par** a few, a couple

c **nætter** is the plural of **en nat** a night.

- 15 **Det vil være afslappende for dig efter de mange kilometer, du har kørt, og afvekslende for mig ikke at skulle lave mad et par dage.** It'll be relaxing for you after driving so far (lit. after the many kilometres you have driven) and a change for me not to have to cook for a couple of days.

a **afslappende** relaxing, from the verb **at slappe af** to relax; **jeg slapper af** I relax.

- b **afvekslende** a change (lit. varying), from the verb **at afveksle** to change.
16 **Der ligger et hotel ovre, som jeg tror er passende.** There's a hotel over there, which I think will be suitable.

passende suitable from **at passe** to suit; **det passer mig godt** that suits me fine.

- 17 **—og på grund af de nedrevne huse på den anden side af gaden må der være en henrivende udsigt.** —and there must be a lovely view, because the houses on the other side of the street have been demolished (lit. —and because of the demolished houses on the other side of the street there must be a lovely view).

- 18 **Jeg løber lige ind og ser, om de har nogle værelser ledige.** I'll just run in and see if they've got any rooms free.
ledig free, vacant.

To minutter senere Two minutes later

- 19 **Bjørn og jeg tager de vigtigste sager.** Bjørn and I will take the most important things.

- 20 **Så kan du køre bilen ind i gården,** Then you can drive the car into the yard,

I receptionen på hotellet At the reception desk in the hotel

- 21 **I receptionen på hotellet** At the reception desk in the hotel

a **receptionen** is both the reception and the reception desk.

b **på hotellet** Note that you would say **De bor på hotellet** but **Nu står de i hotellet.**

- 22 **Er det Dem, der ønsker to værelser?** Are you the lady (lit. is it you) who wants two rooms?

Note that it is **Er det Dem?** and not **Er det De?**

- 23 **Min mand er her om et øjeblik. Han holder med bilen inde i gården.** My husband will be here in a moment. He's waiting in the yard with the car.

at holde means to hold, keep, (here) wait, stop.

- 24 **Vil De være så venlig at vente et øjeblik,** Would you be so kind (as) to wait a moment,

- 25 **så går jeg ud og hjælper ham.** then I'll go out and help him.

Portieren The porter

- 26 **Nej, hvor I slæber!** My, how hard you're working! (lit. how you are slaving)

It is possible to say **I** to more than one person, even if you would normally address one of them as **De**. (**De**, of course, can be both singular and plural.)

- 27 **Det er så lidt, frue.** *Don't mention it (lit. it is so little), madam.*
- 28 **De og Deres mand skal bo på nr. 406 (nummer fire hundrede og seks).** *You and your husband are (lit. will stay) in (room) number 406.*
- 29 **Det er et dobbeltværelse på 4. (fjerde) sal, og der er bad.** *It's a double room with bath on the fourth floor (lit. It is a double room on the fourth floor, and there is (a) bath).*
der er bad *there's (a) bath* is parallel to expressions like *there is hot water/central heating*; in Danish the same construction can be used with countable nouns without using the indefinite article.
- 30 **Den unge mand får nr. 304 (nummer tre hundrede og fire).** *The young man has got (lit. gets) number 304.*
- 31 **Det er på 3. (tredje) sal: et enkeltværelse med brusebad.** *It's on the third floor: a single room with (a) shower.*
- 32 **Nu skal jeg hjælpe Dem op.** *Now I'll help you up(stairs).*
- 33 **Det er for anstrengende, hvis De skal bære det hele.** *It's too much for you to carry (lit. It is too strenuous, if you have to carry all of it).*

Lektion sytten

På hotellet

Lesson seventeen

In the hotel

What happens

The Jørgensens are in their hotel rooms. Henrik looks for his toothbrush and finds all the toilet things in one of the bags. Bjørn comes up to fetch his things, and they discuss how to spend the afternoon. They want to do some washing and to see the news of the last few days on the television and in the newspapers. Henrik drops the cap of the toothpaste down the plughole, but Lise manages to get it up for him. Later they all go down to the restaurant and order various dishes and a bottle of red wine.

New words in this lesson

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| et afløb (-e) plughole | (en) rødkål red cabbage |
| et apparat (-er) apparatus, set | en rødvin (-e) red wine |
| en avis (-er) newspaper | (en) salat lettuce |
| et badekar (-) bathtub | at savne miss |
| banker knocks | ses meet |
| at bede om ask for | en skjorte (-r) shirt |
| bragt brought | en sok (-ker) sock |
| en citronfromage lemon mousse | stegt fried |
| ekstra extra | at stikke put |
| en fisk (-) fish | strygefri drip-dry, non-iron |
| et fjernsyn (-) TV | en strømpe (-r) stocking |
| en flæskesteg roast pork | sulten hungry |
| en hakkebøf (-fer) hamburger | syttende seventeenth |
| hallo hello | særlig particular(ly) |
| et hotelværelse (-r) hotel room | en tandbørste (-r) toothbrush |
| et hul (-ler) hole | en tandpasta (-er) toothpaste |
| en hætte (-r) top | en tandpastatube (-r) toothpaste tube |
| (en) håndsæbe toilet soap | en telefon (-er) telephone |
| (et) kalvekød veal | tempereret warmed |
| en kalvemørbrad tenderloin of veal | tilpas suitably |
| en kartoffel (-fler) potato | tilstoppet stopped up |
| kogt boiled | toiletsager toilet things |
| en lillefinger little finger | en transistorradio (-er) transistor radio |
| lykkes succeed | et TV (-er) television (set) |
| et løg (-) onion | en tørresnor (-e) clothes-line |
| at mangle miss, need | et undertøj underwear |
| en mørbrad tenderloin | at undgå avoid |
| at nå manage | vasker washes |
| (et) oksekød beef | en vin (-e) wine |
| oven i on the top of | et værelse (-r) room |
| plejer is accustomed to | |
| portugisisk Portuguese | at bringe i orden put in order |
| en radioavis radio news bulletin | i årevis for years |
| en rødbede (-r) beetroot | |

Notes

I værelset In the room

- 1 **Lise, ved du, hvor tandpastaen og min tandbørste er?** *Lise, do you know where the toothpaste and my toothbrush are?*
tandpasta, tandbørste *toothpaste, toothbrush* are from **en tand** *a tooth*; the plural of **tand** is **tænder**.
- 2 **De ligger i en af taskerne.** *They're in one of the bags.*
- 3 **Prøv at se oven i min store, røde håndtaske!** *See if you can see it (lit. Try to see) in the top of my big red bag!*

- 4 Her er alle vores tandbørster. Bjørn må savne sin. Jeg ringer ned til ham. *Here are all our toothbrushes. Bjørn must be needing his. I'll phone (down) to him.*
savne miss, lack, need, want.

I telefonen *On the telephone*

- 5 Må jeg bede om værelse nr. 304? *May I have (lit. ask for) room 304 please?*
Må jeg bede om is a useful expression which is similar to the English *Please may I have . . . ?*
Må jeg bede om spisekortet? *May I have the menu, please?*
- 6 Hallo, er det dig, Bjørn? *Hallo, is that you, Bjørn?*
Hallo is only used on the telephone.
- 7 Mangler du ikke noget? *Haven't you forgotten something (lit. Aren't you missing something)?*
Mangler miss, lack, be short of
- 8 Jo, min tandbørste og et stykke håndsæbe. *Yes, my toothbrush and a cake of soap.*
håndsæbe (toilet) soap You could also say sæbe or toiletsæbe;
et stykke sæbe is a piece, cake of soap.
- 9 Jeg kommer op og henter det nu. *I'll come up and get them (lit. it) now.*
Bjørn says *det it*, because he is thinking of what he has forgotten, rather than the number of things he is talking about.

Et minut senere. Bjørn banker. *A minute later. Bjørn knocks.*

- 10 Værsgo', her er dine toiletsager. *Here are your toilet things.*
Værsgo' See L2 N20.
- 11 Jeg vil ned og have et brusebad. *I want to go down and have a shower.*
- 12 Så vil jeg vaske mine sokker og mine strygefri skjorter. *Then I want to wash my socks and my drip-dry shirts.*
strygefri (lit. iron-free) drip-dry, non-iron has no -e in the plural because it ends in a vowel (L6 N31b).
- 13 Jeg skal også vaske: lidt undertøj og nogle strømper. *I'm going to do some washing too: a few underclothes (lit. a little underwear) and some stockings.*
a undertøj from tøj clothes (L4 N21) is only used in the singular.
b nogle strømper some stockings nogen, noget, nogle means some, somebody, something or any, anybody, anything; but the plural nogle

is only used in affirmative sentences. In questions and negative sentences the singular (nogen, noget) is used:

Jeg har nogle strømper *I've got some stockings*; but

Har du nogen strømper? *Have you got any stockings?* and

Jeg har ikke nogen strømper. *I haven't got any stockings, I have no stockings.*

ikke nogen and ikke noget can respectively be contracted to ingen and intet:

Jeg ser ikke nogen tandbørste or Jeg ser ingen tandbørste *I can't see a (any) toothbrush.*

Mangler du noget? Nej, jeg mangler intet. *Are you missing anything? No, I'm not missing anything/I'm missing nothing.*

Jeg kender ingen her i byen or Jeg kender ikke nogen her i byen *I don't know anybody in this town.*

- 14 Skal vi ses i restauranten kl. 18 (klokken seks)? *Shall we meet in the restaurant at 6 o'clock?*

ses is the passive form of *ser see*. With some verbs the passive has a reciprocal meaning if used with a plural subject (the meaning is similar to the use of *hinanden* with an ordinary verb):

De ses (or de ser hinanden) *They see each other, i.e. they meet.*

- 15 Ja, så kan vi nå at få alt bragt i orden inden og få læst aviserne fra de sidste dage. *Yes, then we can manage to get everything in order and read the latest papers before then.*

- a nå manage (to do), be in time (for), arrive, catch (means of transport):
Kan du nå det, før vi går? *Can you manage (to do) it before we leave?*
Vi når ikke at se vagtparaden. *We won't be in time for the changing of the guard.*

Det var mørkt, da vi nåede Århus. *It was dark when we reached Århus.*

Vi må køre nu, ellers når vi ikke færgen. *We must go now, otherwise we won't catch the ferry.*

- b at få alt bragt i orden *to get everything (put) (lit. brought) in order*;
bragt is from *at bringe to bring*.
- c få læst aviserne *to read the newspapers* (lit. *to get the newspapers read*)
- d inden before, before then; inden jul before Christmas
- 16 Jeg skal også have hørt radioavisen, *I must also hear (lit. have heard) the news on the radio,*
radioavisen news bulletin, radio news.
- 17 og jeg vil lige se, hvad der er i fjernsynet. *and I just want to see what's on the television.*
- 18 Tag bare transistorradioen med ned. *Take the transistor radio down with you, if you like.*
bare here is used for emphasis and means *if you like, by all means*.

- 19 Er der TV på hotellet? *Is there (a) television in the hotel?*
et TV is the same as et fjernsyn *a television*; a television set is et fjernsynsapparat or et TV-apparat. You can say *Hvad er der i fjernsynet?* or *Hvad er der i TV?* *What's on (lit. in) the television?*
- 20 Ja, jeg så, der stod et apparat i dagligstuen. *Yes, I saw there was (lit. stood) a set in the lounge.*
en dagligstue *lounge, sitting-room* Stue and værelse both mean *room*, but stue is only used for dining and sitting-rooms.

I badeværelset *In the bathroom*

- 21 Nu tabte jeg hæften til tandpastatuben ned i badekarret. *Now I've dropped (lit. I lost) the top of the toothpaste down into the bath.*
badekar *bath (lit. bathtub)* is the same in the singular and plural.
- 22 Lad mig forsøge at få den op. *Let me try and get it (up).*
- 23 Jeg kan stikke min lillefinger ned i hullet. *I can put my little finger down (lit. down into) the hole.*
The five fingers in Danish are *tommelfingeren the thumb; pegefingeren the index (lit. pointing) finger; langfingeren the middle (lit. long) finger; ringfingeren the ring finger; and lillefingeren the little finger.*
- 24 Det lykkedes. *There we are (lit. It succeeded)!*
at lykkes *to succeed* is almost always used impersonally with *det*: *det lykkes mig I succeed; det lykkedes mig I succeeded; det er lykkedes mig I have succeeded.*
Det er lykkedes (for) mig at gøre det. *I succeeded in doing it.*
- 25 Så undgår vi tilstoppede afløb. *Then we won't stop up the plugholes.*
(lit. Then we avoid stopped-up plugholes).
afløb is another irregular word: *et afløb a plughole; afløbet the plughole; afløbene the plugholes.*

I hotellets restaurant *In the hotel restaurant*

- 26 Har I lyst til fisk, flæskesteg, kalve- eller oksekød? *Do you fancy fish, roast pork, veal or beef?*
kalvekød, oksekød *veal, beef (lit. calves' meat, oxmeat).*
- 27 Jeg er ikke særlig sulten. *I'm not very hungry.*
- a In negative sentences (ikke) ret and (ikke) særlig are used instead of meget very:
Jeg er meget sulten *I'm very hungry*; but
Jeg er ikke særlig sulten *I'm not very hungry.*
- b særlig *special, especially*

- 28 Jeg tager en kalvemørbrad med salat. *I'll have (lit. take) a tenderloin of veal with lettuce.*
- 29 Jeg kunne tænke mig hakkebøf med stegte løg og nye, kogte kartofler. *I'd like a hamburger with fried onions and boiled new potatoes.*
- a hakkebøf (lit. minced beef) is always served with fried onions.
- b løg *onion(s)* is the same in singular and plural.
- c The plural of ny is both ny and nye.
- 30 Jeg vil have flæskesteg med rødbeder og rødkål, *I'd like roast pork with beetroot and red cabbage,*
- 31 og skal vi ikke have citronfromage? *and shall (lit. shan't) we have lemon mousse?*
fromage is a sort of mousse which is a Danish speciality; it is usually flavoured with lemon (*citronfromage*), orange (*appelsinfromage*) or pineapple (*ananasfromage*).
- 32 Det har vi ikke fået i årevis. *We haven't had that for years.*
i årevis for years; i dagevis for days; i ugevis for weeks; i timevis for hours; i månedvis for months.
- 33 Jo, men så må vi også have en flaske rødvin. *Yes, but then we must also have a bottle of red wine.*
- 34 Den portugisiske der er ikke så dyr, og den plejer at være god, hvis den er tilpas tempereret. *That Portuguese one is not too (lit. so) expensive, and it's usually good if it's properly warmed.*
- a plejer is *accustomed, used to*; plejer at + infinitive = *usually + present*:
Han plejer at komme her om morgenen. *He usually comes (lit. he is used to coming) here in the morning.*
Jeg plejede at drikke rødvin. *I used to drink red wine.*
- b tilpas *properly, suitably*
- c tempereret *warmed, i.e. (of red wine) warmed to room temperature.*

What happens

In the lounge of the hotel Henrik explains the Danish numerical system to his son. They talk about the news on television. There is industrial unrest, with threatened strikes, rising prices, and competition from abroad. They decide to go to Den gamle By, an open-air museum, the following day; and Bjørn also wants to go to the University to get some information about the courses there.

New words in this lesson

en amerikaner (-e) American	at håbe (på) hope
arbejdede worked	en håndværker (-e) craftsman
arbejdende working	en ild fire
en arbejdsgiver (-e) employer	ingen no, nobody
en arbejdsløshed unemployment	at konkurrere compete
et arbejdsmarked (-er) labour market	en løn(ning) (-er) wages
atten eighteen	at mægle mediate
attende eighteenth	en nordmand (-mænd) Norwegian
en bygning (-er) building	ofte often
en check (-s) cheque	et ordenstal (-) ordinal
en dagligstue (-r) lounge	otteoghalvfjerdsindstyvende
en ener (-e) unit	seventy-eighth
et fagforbund (-) trade union	et parti (-er) party
fandt found	politisk political
firs eighty	puster blow
firsindstyve eighty	samlet collected
et Folketing Danish parliament	stiger rise
en folketingsmand (-mænd) member of parliament	en strejke (-r) strike
forkortet abbreviated	studieforhold studying conditions
et forlig (-) compromise, settlement	en svensker (-e) Swede
et frilandsmuseum (-seer) open-air museum	et talsystem (-er) numerical system
fyrretyvende fortieth	et tal (-) number
halvfemte four and a half	talte spoke
halvfemsindstyvende ninetyeth	en tier (-e) ten
halvfjerde three and a half	tres sixty
halvfjerdsindstyve seventy	tresindstyve sixty
halvfjerdsindstyvende seventieth	truer is threatening
halvtredje two and a half	en TV-avis (-er) television news
halvtredsindstyvende fiftieth	at tælle count
hvorfor why	udlandet foreign countries
	et universitet (-er) university

en uro trouble
vel presumably

at blive enig om agree upon
at få lyst til take a fancy to
at puste til ilden add fuel to the flames
ellers by the way

i stedet for instead of
LO (Landsorganisationen) Trade Union Federation
o. lign. (og lignende) and the like
på dansk in Danish

Notes

I hotellets dagligstue In the lounge of the hotel

- 1 Jeg talte lige med en amerikaner, der kunne noget dansk. *I've just been speaking to an American who could (speak) some Danish.*
- a talte past tense (regular) of at tale to speak; jeg talte I talked, I've been talking.
- b ... der kunne noget dansk ... who could (speak) some Danish, who knew some Danish.
at kunne to be able to also means to know:
Han kan sine ting. He knows his business (lit. his things).
The difference between at kunne and at kende is that at kunne means to know (something) well, whereas at kende is merely to be familiar with. Note, however, that unlike at kende, at kunne cannot mean to know a person; generally it can only be used of things which can be learnt, e.g. a language or skill:
Bjørn kan Danmarks kunsthistorie Bjørn knows Denmark's art history (i.e. he knows it thoroughly).
- 2 Men han fandt det meget svært at tælle på dansk. *But he found it very difficult to count in Danish.*
- a fandt found from the strong verb at finde to find.
- b at tælle to count is also irregular: jeg tæller I count, jeg talte I counted, jeg har talt I have counted.
- c på dansk in Danish; Hvad hedder det på dansk? How do you say that in Danish? What's that (called) in Danish?
- 3 Far, hvorfor hedder det fyrretyvende (40.) og halvtredsindstyvende (50.)? *Dad, why do they say "forty-twentieth" for fortieth, and "fifty-twentieth" for fiftieth (lit. Dad, why is it called fortieth and fiftieth?)*
- 4 Fordi man i meget gamle dage havde et talsystem med tyve. *Because in the (very) old days there was a numerical system based on (lit. with) twenty.*
Note the word-order in this subordinate clause; in a main clause it

would be **I gamle dage havde man et talsystem med tyve** or **Man havde i gamle dage et talsystem med tyve**.

- 5 **Halvtredsindstyve (50) er halvtredje (2½) gange tyve (20)**, *Fifty is two and a half times twenty*,
halvtredje two and a half (lit. *half third*)
- 6 **tresindstyve (60) er tre (3) gange tyve (20)**, *sixty is three times twenty*,
Halvtredsindstyve and tresindstyve are really **halv tredje sinde tyve** and **tre sinde tyve** (*sinde* is an old word, for *gange times*); so **halvtreds** has a **d** while **tres** has not.
- 7 **halvfjerdsindstyve (70) er halvfjerde (3½) gange tyve (20)**, *seventy is three and a half* (lit. *half fourth*) *times twenty*,
- 8 **firsindstyve (80) er fire (4) gange tyve (20)**, *eighty is four times twenty*,
- 9 **og halvfemsindstyve (90) halvfemte (4½) gange tyve (20)**. *and ninety (is) four and a half times twenty*.
- 10 **Så er de moderne tal forkortet til halvtreds (50), tres (60), halvfjerds (70), firs (80), og halvfems (90)**. *Then the modern numbers are abbreviated to halvtreds (50), tres (60), halvfjerds (70), firs (80), and halvfems (90)*.
Although the abbreviated forms are used nowadays, the old forms (**halvtredsindstyve** etc.) are used with the ending **-ende** to form the ordinals from 40 to 99: **fireogfyrretyvende (44th)**, **femoghalvtredsindstyvende (55th)**, **seksogtresindstyvende (66th)**, etc.
- 11 **Nu forstår jeg det. Men de lange ordenstal er svære**. *Now I understand. But the long ordinals are difficult*.
forstår understand **At forstå** is a strong verb: **jeg forstår I understand**, **jeg forstod I understood**, **jeg har forstået I have understood**.
- 12 **Dem bruger man heller ikke meget**. *They aren't used much either*.
at bruge to use is regular: **jeg bruger, jeg brugte, jeg har brugt**, but **bruge** and **bruger** are pronounced with a long **u**, **brugte** and **brugt** with a short **u**.
- 13 **Man foretrækker ofte at sige nr. 78 (nummer otteoghalvfjerds) i stedet for den otteoghalvfjerdsindstyvende (78.)**. *People often prefer to say number seventy-eight instead of seventy-eighth*.
a **at sige** is an irregular verb: **jeg siger, jeg sagde, jeg har sagt**.
b A full stop after a figure indicates that it is an ordinal: **57. 57th**.
- 14 **Så er det også svært med enerne foran tierne: syvogtredive (37) i stedet for tretisyv**. *Then it's also difficult with the units in front of the tens: seven and thirty instead of thirty-seven*.
- 15 **Ja, nordmændene og svenskerne siger tretisyv, men vi bruger det kun på checks o. lign. (og lignende)**. *Yes, the Norwegians and Swedes say*

seven and thirty, but we only use it on cheques and the like.

- a Norwegian and Swedish are very similar to Danish, but their numerical systems are different. Danish children learn Norwegian and Swedish at school, so it is quite usual for Danes to be acquainted with the other Scandinavian languages.
- b **checks** is an irregular word: **en check, checken, checks, checkene**. On cheques the numbers **tretitre (33)**, **firetifleve (44)**, **femtifem (55)**, **seksstiseks (66)**, **syvtisv (77)**, **ottetiotte (88)**, **nitini (99)**, etc. are used.

TV-avisen *The news on television*

- 16 **Var der ellers noget interessant i TV-avisen?** *By the way, was there anything interesting on the (TV) news?*
- 17 **Der er lidt uro på arbejdsmarkedet**. *There's a little industrial unrest* (lit. *there's a little trouble on the labour market*).
uro trouble, unrest is the opposite of **ro peace, rest**. The prefix **u-** is mostly used where English uses **un-, in-, im-**: **ukendt** the opposite of **kendt known**; **umoderne** *unfashionable* from **moderne modern**; **at have ret to be right**, **at have uret to be wrong**.
- 18 **Arbejdsgiverne og fagforbundene kan ikke blive enige om lønningerne**. *The employers and trade unions can't agree on wages*.
a **en fagforening trade union** (for a town or district); **et fagforbund** is a national federation of local trade unions.
b **at blive enige om to agree on, come to an agreement on**: **Vi bliver enige om en plan We agree upon a plan**.
c **lønninger wages**; in the singular **en løn** is used.
- 19 **Er der strejke nogen steder?** *Is anybody striking anywhere* (lit. *Is there strike anywhere*)?
- 20 **Nej, men LO truer med det**. *No, but the Trade Union Federation is threatening one*.
LO stands for **Landsorganisationen**, the federation of all the Danish **fagforbund**.
- 21 **Nu må vi håbe på, at folketingsmændene vil forsøge at mægle**. *Now we must hope that Parliament* (lit. *the members of Parliament*) *will try to mediate*.
a **håbe på hope** It would also be correct to say **Nu må vi håbe, at . . .**
På introduces all prepositional phrases which follow **håbe** as an object:
Jeg håber på regnvejr for i morgen. I'm hoping for rain tomorrow.
It can also be used to introduce a clause:
Jeg håber på, at det bliver regnvejr i morgen or **Jeg håber, at det bliver regnvejr i morgen I'm hoping there'll be rain tomorrow**.

- b The Danish **Folketinget** (parliament) has 179 members who are called **folketingsmænd** (even when they are women). **Folketingsmænd** is from **Folketing + mænd** *men*, the plural of **en mand**.
- 22 **Ja, og at de forskellige politiske partier på Christiansborg ikke puster til ilden.** *Yes, and that the various political parties at Christiansborg do not add fuel to the flames (lit. blow to the fire).*
Christiansborg Slot *Christiansborg Castle* is the third castle of that name on the present site. It was built as a royal palace, but now houses (among other things) the **Folketing**. **Christiansborg** has become synonymous with **Folketinget**.
- 23 **Der bliver nok forlig.** *There will probably be a settlement.*
et forlig *a compromise, settlement* has no plural ending; the plural is **forlig** *settlements*, **forligene** *the settlements*.
- 24 **Ellers stiger priserne igen,** *Otherwise prices will rise again,*
- 25 **og Danmark kan ikke konkurrere med udlandet.** *and Denmark won't be able to compete with foreign countries.*
- 26 **Så kommer der vel arbejdsløshed, og det er der da ingen, der er interesserede i.** *Then there will presumably be unemployment, and of course that can't be in anybody's interest.*

Lidt senere *A little later*

- 27 **Skal vi gå i Den gamle By i morgen?** *Shall we go to Den gamle By tomorrow?*
- 28 **Et frilandsmuseum, hvor man har samlet gamle bygninger fra mange af Danmarks byer.** *An open-air museum where they've collected old buildings from many towns in Denmark.*
et museum is an irregular word, and like most foreign nouns in Danish it has to be learnt by heart: **et museum, museet, museer, museerne.**
- 29 **Der er også arbejdende værksteder, hvor man kan se håndværkere, som de arbejdede i gamle dage.** *There are also workshops where you can see craftsmen as they used to work in the old days.*
- 30 **Jeg vil også på universitetet** *I also want to go to the university*
- 31 **og høre lidt om studieforholdene** *and find out (lit. hear) a bit about studying (lit. the studying conditions) there.*
- a **et studium** is similar to **et museum**:
et studium, studiet, studier, studierne.
- b **et forhold** (plural, **forhold**) means *condition, circumstance, relationship*.
- 32 **hvis jeg får lyst til at blive her et år.** *in case I'd like to stay here for a year.*
at få lyst til *to take a fancy to*; do not confuse it with **at have lyst til** (L4) *to like to*.

What happens

In their hotel in Århus the Jørgensens have breakfast and discuss their plans for the day. They walk to Den gamle By, dressed for rain. Bjørn continues to the university, where he runs into a professor who is an old classmate of Henrik's. The professor invites them all to spend a few days at his country cottage to celebrate the feast of Saint John (Midsummer's Eve), and the Jørgensens make their plans for the next week.

New words in this lesson

aner guess	sent late
bagefter slow	en sky (-er) cloud
et bål (-) bonfire	snart almost
endnu en another	et sommerhus (-e) weekend cottage
en forberedelse (-r) preparation	særdeles extremely
en fredag (-e) Friday	en te tea
hjælper til help	tidligt early
håbløst hopelessly	tidsnok til in time to
inviterer invite	en torsdag (-e) Thursday
en klassekammerat (-er) classmate	treogtyvende twenty-third
en krydder (-e) rusk	trække op wind
en kunsthistorie art history	upraktisk impractical
en kvart (-er) quarter	et ur (-e) watch, clock
let light	velbegavet intelligent
en lørdag (-e) Saturday	
mellem between	at bestille plads book a place
mødes meet	at komme for sent be late
nittende nineteenth	at komme frem come out
noget somewhat	en (et) . . . til another, one more
en onsdag (-e) Wednesday	Hvad dag er det i dag? What day is today?
otteogtyvende twenty-eighth	i aften this evening
overmorgen the day after tomorrow	i aftes last night
overnatter stay overnight	i forgårs the day before yesterday
en paraply (-er) umbrella	i går yesterday
en professor (-er) professor	i morges this morning
præcis sharp, punctual	i nat last night, tonight
en regnfrakke (-r) raincoat	i onsdags last Wednesday
et rundstykke (-r) roll	iøvrigt by the way
Sankt Hansaften Midsummer's Eve	om lidt in a little while
selvstændig independent	

Næste morgen ved morgenmaden *Next morning at breakfast*

- 1 **Næste morgen ved morgenmaden** *Next morning at breakfast*
The names of the meals are mostly used with the article in Danish.
- 2 **Vil I have mere te?** *Would you like any more tea?*
- 3 **Ja tak, og en krydder til.** *Yes, please, and another rusk.*
- a **kryddere** are rusks which are eaten with coffee or tea for breakfast.
There is **en overkrydder**, the rounded top, and **en underkrydder**, the flat part underneath, which most people prefer.
- b **en krydder til another rusk** **En (to, tre) . . . til** is one (two, three) more, another one (two, three):
Vi har været i Danmark i en uge, og vi skal være her i to uger til. *We've been in Denmark for a week, and we're going to stay here for another two weeks.*
Vil I have en kop te til? *Would you like another cup of tea?*
Do not confuse **en . . . til** with **en anden** another, meaning a different (one):
Må jeg få en anden kop? *Please may I have another cup?* means that the person speaking wants a different cup from the one he has.
- 4 **Jeg må også have et halvt rundstykke.** *I must also have half a roll.*
- 5 **8¹⁰ (ti minutter over otte).** *Ten past eight.*
For details of how to tell the time in Danish, see the grammatical appendix.
- 6 **Vi skal af sted mellem 8³⁰ (halv ni) og 8⁴⁵ (et kvarter i ni),** *We must leave between 8.30 and 8.45,*
- 7 **hvis vi skal gå til Den gamle By, og være der kl. 9 (klokken ni) præcis.** *if we're going to walk to Den gamle By and get there at 9 o'clock sharp.*
præcis means sharp, punctual:
Klokken er præcis 9 *It's nine o'clock sharp;*
Han er aldrig præcis. *He's never punctual. He's never on time.*
- 8 **Det er da godt, det ikke regner mere,** *It's a good thing it isn't raining any more,*
det ikke regner mere, *it isn't raining any more, See L7 N8b.*
- 9 **men vejret er noget gråt,** *but the weather is somewhat grey,*
noget means somewhat: **Han er noget gammel** *He's somewhat old.*
- 10 **og der er nogle slemme, sorte skyer.** *and there are some nasty black clouds.*
en sky (plural, **skyer**) means a cloud; so **en skyskraber** literally means a cloudscraper, not a skyscraper!
- 11 **Jeg tager en let regnfrakke med,** *I'll take a light raincoat with me,*
let means both light and easy (L1 N25).

- 12 **Jeg tror mit ur er bagefter.** *I think my watch is slow.*
mit ur er bagefter *my watch is slow*; you could also say **mit ur går for langsomt** (lit. *my watch is going too slowly*). **Et ur** means both watch and clock.
- 13 **Jeg har vist glemt at trække det op.** *I've probably forgotten to wind it.*
- 14 **Den er 10⁵⁰ (ti minutter i elleve).** *It's ten to eleven.*
- 15 **Jeg må hellere gå nu.** *I'd better go now.*
- 16 **Jeg ringede til universitetet i går, og de sagde, jeg kunne komme 11¹⁵ (kvart over).** *I phoned the university yesterday, and they said I could come at a quarter past.*
kvart over (at a) quarter past; Bjørn has already mentioned the time earlier (N14), so it is not necessary for him to repeat **elleve** here.
- 17 **Skal vi mødes på hotellet præcis 13⁰⁰ (klokken et)?** *Shall we meet in the hotel at one o'clock sharp?*
mødes is the passive of **at møde** to meet, used with a reciprocal meaning as **ses** in L17 N14.
- 18 **Solen er jo kommet frem, og det ser ud til at blive varmt.** *The sun's come out, and it looks as if it's getting warm.*

Ved frokosten på hotellet *At lunch in the hotel*

- 19 **Undskyld, jeg kommer ti minutter for sent,** *I'm sorry I'm ten minutes (too) late,*
- 20 **men I aner ikke, hvem jeg mødte på universitetet.** *but you'll never guess who(m) I met at the university.*
- 21 **Han var håbløst upraktisk i skolen, men særdeles velbegavet og selvstændigt tænkende.** *He was hopelessly impractical at school, but extremely intelligent and independent-minded (lit. independently thinking).*
a **håbløst** and **selvstændigt** are the neuter forms of the adjectives **håbløs** and **selvstændig**, used as adverbs. Not all adverbs are formed this way, however; you already know **særdeles**, **aldrig**, **kun**, **ikke**, etc.
b **velbegavet** is a combination of **vel** well and **begavet** gifted, intelligent.
- 22 **Han har været professor i kunsthistorie her i snart ti år,** *He's been professor of art history here for almost ten years,*
professor i kunsthistorie *professor of art history;*
Han er lærer i historie *He is a history teacher, he teaches history.*
- 23 **så vi havde meget at snakke om.** *so we had a lot to talk about.*
- 24 **Han ringer iøvrigt om lidt for at invitere os alle tre ud til sit sommerhus på Mols.** *He's going to phone in a little while to invite us all out to his weekend cottage in Mols.*

- a os alle tre *the three of us* (lit. *us all three*); Vi kommer alle tre *The three of us will come.*
- b ud til sit sommerhus på Mols (out) to his weekend cottage in Mols
Note the Danish expressions **at tage ud på landet** to go out into the country and **at tage ind til byen** to go up to town, go into town.
- c sommerhus (lit. *summer house*) is a weekend home in the country.
- d Mols is a small hilly peninsula not far from Århus.
- 25 Der er telefon til hr. Henrik Jørgensen. *There's a phone call for Mr Henrik Jørgensen.*

Invitation *An invitation*

- 26 Vi skal ud til Jens Hansens i morgen. *We're going down to Jens Hansen's tomorrow.*
- 27 Han sagde, vi skulle komme til frokost og blive der et par dage. *He said we should come to lunch and stay there for a couple of days.*
Han sagde, vi skulle ... See L16 N14a.
- 28 De har stort Sankt Hansbål i morgen aften. *They're going to have a big St John's Eve bonfire tomorrow evening.*
- a Sankt Hansbål All over Denmark bonfires are lit on St John's Eve (23rd June), and usually a witch is put on top of the fire. Sankt Hans Saint John is Johannes Døberen John the Baptist.
- b i morgen aften *tomorrow evening* Many expressions of time in Danish begin with i:
i forgårs *the day before yesterday*; i går *yesterday*; i dag *today*;
i morgen *tomorrow*; i overmorgen *the day after tomorrow*; i morges and i formiddag *this morning* (respectively talking of the earlier and later parts of the morning—see L1 N13b); i eftermiddag *this afternoon*;
i aften *this evening* (but i aftes *last night*); i nat *last night or tonight*;
i onsdags *last Wednesday*; i går morges, *yesterday morning*; similarly i går middag, i går eftermiddag, i går nat; and i morgen tidlig, i morgen formiddag, i morgen middag, i morgen eftermiddag, i morgen aften, and i morgen nat.
I denne uge, i denne måned *this week, this month*; but i år *this year*.
- 29 Åh ja, den 23. (treogtyvende) juni! Hvad dag er det i dag? *Oh, yes, the 23rd of June! What day is it today?*
- a den 23. (treogtyvende) juni *the twenty-third (of) June*; den 1. (første) august *the first (of) August* The dates are written in Danish as in English, although note (i) that *of* is not used in Danish, and that (ii) the names of the months are not capitalized. (For a list of the ordinal numbers, see the grammatical appendix.)
- b What's the date today? is Hvilken dato er det i dag?

- 30 Hvis vi så bliver der i overmorgen, torsdag, og tager af sted på fredag, kan vi overnatte på Fyn på vejen tilbage *Then if we stay there the day after tomorrow, Thursday, and leave on Friday, we can stay overnight in Funen on our way back*
- 31 og tage færgen over Storebælt tidligt i lørdag morgen. *and take the ferry across the Great Belt early on Saturday morning.*
The Great Belt is the stretch of water between Funen and Zealand.
- 32 Så må vi bestille plads på færgen. *Then we must book a place on the ferry.*
at bestille plads to book a place; **at bestille** is to order.
- 33 Vi kommer til København tidsnok til at hjælpe til med forberedelserne til Svends 50 (halvtreds)-års fødselsdag på mandag, den 28. (otteogtyvende).
We'll arrive in Copenhagen in time to help with the preparations for Svend's fiftieth (lit. fifty years') birthday on Monday the 28th.
- a på mandag on Monday på is used with days of the week in the future; på mandag means on Monday (i.e. this coming Monday); på næste mandag or på mandag otte dage on Monday week; på mandag fjorten dage a fortnight on Monday. In the past i is used, and -s added to the name of the day; i fredags *last Friday*; i fredags for fjorten dage siden *two weeks ago last Friday*.
- b at hjælpe is a strong verb: jeg hjælper, jeg hjalp, jeg har hjulpet.
At hjælpe til (med) is the intransitive form of **at hjælpe (med)**, i.e. the form which is not followed by an object. Note how it is used in these examples:
Bjørn hjælper til med at dække bordet. *Bjørn helps to lay the table.*
Bjørn hjælper Lene med at dække bordet. *Bjørn helps Lene lay the table.*

What happens

Henrik, Lise and Bjørn are welcomed by Professor Jens Hansen and his domineering wife, Jytte, in their cottage on Mols. Their sons, Peter and Michael, are very quiet. They have lunch under the apple tree, and in the evening Bjørn lights the bonfire. On Friday morning the Jørgensens polish the car and drive south through Jutland.

New words in this lesson

anbragt placed	at stilles be placed
blevet been	en stol (-e) chair
(et) brænde firewood	at stoppes to be crammed
brændt af burnt	sydpå southwards
dominerende domineering	at synges be sung
en dreng (-e) boy	at sættes be put, placed
energiske energetic	sørg for see to
faktisk actually	sådan like that
at fejres to be celebrated	at tænde light
en heks (-e) witch	at tændes be lit
hjertelig heartily	en tændstik (-ker) match
intelligent intelligent	tænk imagine
at koges be boiled	uden om round
kort short	underkuet subdued, henpecked
at laves be made	at vaskes be washed
ligeså as, equally	et æbletræ (-er) apple tree
lykkedes succeeded	et æg (-) egg
lysner gets light	
(en) natmad night meal	
opdraget brought up	
at ordnes be seen to	at hjælpes ad help each other
at pakkes be packed	at lave færdig finish
at passes be looked after	en times tid about an hour's time
at pudses be polished	Hjertelig velkommen welcome
rar friendly	Midsummervisen the Midsummer's
at ses be seen	Eve song
en smule (-r) bit	og så videre (osv.) etc.
stabled op piled up	

I sommerhuset på Mols In the weekend cottage on Mols

- 1 Tænk, at det lykkedes at få jer herud, så vi kan mødes efter alle de år.** Just imagine meeting out here after all these years! (lit. Imagine, we succeeded in getting you down here so we could meet after all these years.)
det lykkedes See L17 N24.
- 2 Hjertelig velkommen! Det er min kone, Jytte, og mine drenge, Peter og Michael.** Welcome! Here are my wife, Jytte, and my boys, Peter and Michael.
- 3 Det er nogle store drenge, synes jeg.** They're big (to be called) boys, I think!
synes think always has the passive ending -s: **at synes** to think; **jeg synes** I think; **jeg syntes** I thought; **jeg har syntes** I have thought.
- 4 Det varme skal lige laves færdigt,** The warm (food) must just be got ready,
a det varme the warm food (lit. the warm, that which is warm) Note how the adjective (**varme**) is used as a noun.
b laves be made is the passive of **at lave** to make. **At laves færdig(t)** is to be got ready, finished; **færdigt** has the ending -t because **det varme** is neuter.
- 5 nogle æg koges osv. (og så videre).** some eggs boiled, etc.
a æg is the same in the singular and plural: **et æg** an egg; **ægget** the egg; **æg** eggs; **æggene** the eggs.
b laves (færdigt), koges The Danes often prefer to use the passive where an English speaker would use the active; so Jytte says **Det varme skal lige laves færdigt** The warm food just has to be got ready rather than **Jeg skal lige lave det varme færdigt** I must just get the warm food ready.
- 6 Peter, bordet og stolene skal stilles hen under æbletræet!** Peter, the table and chairs have to go (lit. be placed) there under the apple tree!
- og Michael: Sørg for, at gæsterne får set huset!** And Michael: show the guests the house! (lit. see to (it) that the guests are shown the house!)
- 8 Er der noget, der skal passes eller ordnes i køkkenet, kan jeg da hjælpe dig.** If there's anything that has to be done or seen to in the kitchen, I can help you.
Note the use of the word **da** for emphasis.
- 9 Tusind tak. Vi hjælpes altid ad, når vi er herude, så alt er faktisk ordnet.** Thank you very much. We always help each other when we're down here, so in fact everything's ready (lit. arranged).

- a **hjælpes ad** *help each other* can only be used in the plural. It is the same as **hjelper hinanden**; **de hjælpes ad** or **de hjælper hinanden** *they help each other*.
- b Note that the **h** is never pronounced in **hj**.

Samme aften, Sankt Hansbål *The Midsummer's Eve bonfire that evening*

- 10 Nu skal bålet tændes. *Now the bonfire has to be lit.*
- 11 Ja, alt brændet er stablet op, og heksen er blevet anbragt på toppen. *Yes, all the firewood is piled up, and the witch has been placed on top.*
There are two forms of the passive in Danish: (1) with the -s ending (**koges, ordnes, laves**, etc); and (2) with **at blive** and past participle. Only the second form can be used in the perfect; hence **Heksen anbringes på toppen** or **Heksen bliver anbragt på toppen** *The witch is (being) placed on top*; but only **Heksen er blevet anbragt på toppen** *The witch has been placed on top*. (This rule does not apply to verbs like **at synes** and **at lykkes**, which are passive in form:
Det er lykkedes for ham at nå det. *He has succeeded in reaching it.*)
- 12 Bjørn, du har jo aldrig set, hvordan Sankt Hans fejres her i landet. *Bjørn, I know you've never seen how Midsummer is celebrated in this country.*
Sankt Hans fejres *Midsummer is celebrated* could also read **Sankt Hans bliver fejret**. **Sankt Hans** *Midsummer*, lit. *St John's day*), means all the midsummer festivities, and not only the celebration on St John's Eve.
- 13 Tændstikken skal sættes til de gamle aviser ovre på den anden side. *The match has to be put to the old newspapers on the other side.*
The passive of **at sætte** is **at sættes** or **at blive sat to be placed**; **jeg sættes** or **jeg blev sat** *I was placed*; **jeg er blevet sat** (note that the -s form can not be used here) *I have been placed*.
- 14 Jo tak. Hvornår skal Midsommervisen synges? *Yes, please. When are we going to sing the Midsummer's Eve song?*
Midsommervisen *the Midsummer's Eve song*, which starts with the words **Vi elsker vort land** *We love our country*, was written in the late 19th century by the poet Holger Drachmann, who wrote about the beautiful long summer evenings.
- 15 Først om en times tid, når heksen er blevet brændt af, *Only in an hour's time, when the witch has been burnt,*
en times tid means *approximately an hour's time*:
Forestillingen varer en halvanden times tid. *The performance goes on for about an hour and a half.*

Vi bliver i Danmark i en måneds tid. *We're staying in Denmark for about a month.*

- 16 og det begynder at blive mørkt. *and it starts getting dark.*
- 17 Men her i Danmark er natterne jo meget korte på denne tid af året. *But here in Denmark the nights are very short at this time of year.*
- 18 Ja, men alle gæsterne bliver her, til det bliver lyst. *Yes, but all the guests stay here until it gets light.*
At the end of June it gets light at about 2 a.m. in Denmark.
- 19 Vi spiser først natmad, når det lysner i nordøst. *We only have the late supper when it gets light in the north-east.*
- a **natmad(en)** is a late supper which is served to guests late at night when it is almost time to go home, for example after a party.
- b **at lysne to dawn, get light**, is a rather poetic word, although even someone like Jytte Hansen might use it to describe the Midsummer evenings.
- c The points of the compass are **nord, syd, øst og vest**, *north, south, east, and west*.

Fredag morgen *Early on Friday morning*

- 20 Så skal der pakkes. *We still have to pack* (lit. *Then there is to be packed*).
- 21 I dag skal vi køre langt, og der er meget, der skal ses på vejen ned gennem Jylland. *We've got a long way to drive today* (lit. *today must we drive far*), and *there's a lot to see* (lit. *much that must be seen*) on our way down through Jutland.
- 22 Bilen skal vaskes og pudses, før bagagen stoppes ind. *The car must be washed and polished before the luggage is crammed into it.*
Note the three passive forms **vaskes, pudses, and stoppes**.
- 23 Så skal Bjørn og jeg nok pakke imens. *Then Bjørn and I will pack in the mean time.*

På vej sydpå *On the way south*

- 24 Hvis vi skal uden om Århus, så skal vi til højre nu, far. *If we're going to avoid* (lit. *(go) round*) *Århus, we must turn right now. Dad.*
- 25 Det var vel nok en rar og intelligent familie, men Jytte var lidt for dominerende. *That was a very friendly and intelligent family, but Jytte was a bit too domineering.*
dominerende is the present participle of **at dominere to domineer**; the ending -ende corresponds to -ing in English.
- 26 Måske er hun blevet sådan, fordi hun har sådan en upraktisk mand, og

to ligeså upraktiske sønner. *Maybe she's got like that because she has an impractical husband and two equally impractical sons.*

27 **Ja, de må være blevet opdraget af faderen,** *Yes, they must have been brought up by their father,*

28 **—som måske er blevet en lille smule underkuet af sin energiske kone.**
—who perhaps has been a little henpecked by his energetic wife.

a **han er blevet . . . underkuet** *he's been henpecked*, perfect passive of **at underkue** *henpeck*, *subdue*.

b **en lille smule** *a little, a little bit*

c **energisk** has the ending **-e** after **sin**.

Lektion enogtyve

Rejsen ender

Lesson twenty-one

The journey ends

What happens

In a camping site on Funen the Jørgensens have their morning wash, and Lise tells the men about two little children she has seen having a fight in the shower. Henrik has hurt his leg, so Bjørn drives to the ferry. Meanwhile Svend and Else are preparing the table for Svend's birthday party. The Jørgensens surprise them by arriving back earlier than expected. Svend and Else give their guests a hearty welcome.

New words in this lesson

at **arrangeres** be arranged

et **ben** (-) leg

en **bordplan** (-er) table arrangement

brun brown, tanned

brusekabiner shower block

dig yourself

enogtyvende twenty-first

en **fartgrænse** (-r) speed limit

(et) **fritidstøj** casual clothes

fynsk (of) Funen

føler mig feel

før earlier, beforehand

gemte sig for hid from

gør ondt hurts

heldigvis fortunately

interesserer sig are interested

især especially

jer yourselves

at **klæde sig på** get dressed

lille bitte tiny

mig myself

nemlig because, that's to say

nødig reluctantly

et **ord** (-) word

ordentligt properly

os ourselves

over over

overskride exceed

at **placeres** be placed

pludselig suddenly

rendte ran

et **rum** (-) room

shorts shorts

sikker på sure of

et **skolenævn** (-) parents' council

at **skynde sig** hurry

at **skænde** scold

at **skændes** quarrel

sloges fought

slå beat, hit

at **slås** fight

sprøjtede splashed

en **søster** (-re) sister

tilovers left over

trækker drag

en **tvillingebror** twin brother

tørrede dried

at **få til bords** get as a dinner-partner

at **hygge sig** feel at home, get on well

at **lægge en plan** make a plan

at **ringe på** ring the bell

at **sætte vand over** put the water on

at **trække på det ene ben** limp

ikke? isn't it? haven't you?

Notes

På en fynsk campingplads *In a camping site on Funen*

1 **På en fynsk campingplads** *In a camping site on Funen*
fynsk *Funen, of Funen*

2 **har I vasket jer?** *have you washed?*
at vaske sig means *to wash (oneself)*, *have a wash*.

3 **Jeg skal nemlig hen og vaske mig nu.** *Because I'm going to have a wash now.*
nemlig *because, namely, that is to say*

4 **Gå du bare over og vask dig, mens jeg sætter vand over til te.** *You (just) go over and wash while I put the water on for tea.*

a **Gå du bare** is a less forceful way of expressing the imperative than **gå**.
b **over, ned, ud over** (*there*), *down, out*, etc. indicate movement towards a place, while the forms ending in **-e** (*ovre, nede, ude* etc.) indicate action at a certain place (L7 N3c).

c **at sætte vand over** *to put the water on*

Et kvarter senere *A quarter of an hour later*

5 **Der stod en lille bitte pige og vaskede sig, og ved siden af stod hendes tvillingebror og vaskede sig.** *There was a little girl washing herself, and next to her her twin brother was washing himself.*
stod . . . og vaskede sig See L7 N16c.

- 6 Pludselig begyndte de at skændes og lidt efter at slå. *Suddenly they began to quarrel and shortly afterwards to fight.*

You have already seen that some verbs have a reciprocal meaning when used in the passive; *de skændes* they quarrel (lit. they scold each other) and *de slå* they fight (lit. they beat each other) are two more examples of this.

Bjørn skal køre. *Bjørn is going to drive.*

- 7 Far, har du slået dig? *Have you hurt yourself, Dad?*
at slå sig to hurt oneself, from at slå to hit, beat (past tense, slog, past participle, slået).
- 8 Jeg synes, du trækker på det ene ben. *I think you're limping* (lit. *I think you're dragging on the one leg*).
det ene ben one leg Den/det ene . . . den anden/det andet one . . . the other:
Han har slået det ene ben, men ikke det andet *He's hurt one* (lit. *the one*) leg but not the other
Det ene år er godt, det andet dårligt. *One year's good, the other bad.*
- 9 Ja, det gør lidt ondt. *Yes, it hurts a little.*
at gøre ondt to hurt
- 10 Men det er ikke noget særligt. *But it's nothing serious* (lit. *special*).
- 11 Så kan jeg køre i dag. Hvornår går den færge, vi har fået plads på?
Then I can drive today. When does the ferry we've got a place on leave?
at få plads to book (lit. to get place, room)
- 12 9⁴⁰ (ni fyrre); *Nine forty*;
The time in timetables and suchlike is always expressed in this way.
If it were an answer to *Hvad er klokken?* it would be *tyve minutter i ti* twenty minutes to ten.
- 13 men vi skal være der et kvarter før. *but we have to be there a quarter of an hour beforehand.*
- 14 Skal vi ikke klæde os ordentligt på i dag? *Shall we get dressed up* (lit. *dress properly*) today?
at klæde is to dress; at klæde sig på is to get dressed; to put on is at tage på:
Jeg tager min kjole på *I put on my dress.*
- 15 Det er da ikke nødvendigt. *That isn't necessary is it?*
- 16 De fleste er i fritidstøj. *Most people wear casual clothes.*
To wear is at have på or at være i (lit. to be in):
Hun har kjole på or hun er i kjole *she's wearing a dress.*
- 17 Tror I ikke, vi skal skynde os? *Don't you think we should hurry?*

- a at tro means to think, to believe:
Hvad tror du? What do you think?
Hvad tror du på? What do you believe in?
- b at skynde sig to hurry is reflexive: *jeg skynder mig I hurry; jeg skyndte mig I hurried; jeg har skyndt mig I (have) hurried.*
- 18 Jo, det er bedre, end at du skynder dig, når du skal køre. *Yes, that's better than if you hurry when you're driving.*
- 19 Vi skal jo nødig overskride fartgrænserne. *I wouldn't like us to exceed the speed limits.*
nødig means reluctantly, unwillingly, and is used in some idiomatic expressions with the sense of *shouldn't like to*:
Jeg gør det nødig I shouldn't like (to do) it, I hate to do it.
Det skulle nødig ske That would be very unfortunate.

Travl lørdag hos Else og Svend *A busy Saturday at Else and Svend's*

- 20 Har du lagt bordplanen? *Have you made the plan for the table?*
at lægge en plan to make (lit. to lay) a plan. Do not confuse at lægge with at ligge to lie; but to lie down is at lægge sig ned (lit. to lay oneself down).
- 21 Jeg er ikke helt sikker på, hvordan de sidste otte skal placeres. *I'm not quite sure how the last eight should be placed.*
a *I am sure* is *jeg er sikker*; but if anything follows på must be used after sikker: *Er du sikker på det? Are you sure of that?*
- 22 Hvis Birthe får Jakob til bords, og Grethe bliver anbragt ved siden af Lars, *If Birthe sits next to Jakob, and Grethe is placed next to Lars,*
til bords There are a few words which take the genitive ending -s after til. *At få nogen til bords* is to get someone as a dinner-partner, sit next to (someone) at table; *at gå til bords* to go in to dinner; *at sætte sig til bords* to sit down to dinner.
Jeg havde hende til bords She was my dinner partner.
- 23 —kan Niels få Helle. —*Niels can have Helle* (i.e. as a dinner-partner).
- 24 De interesserer sig for de samme ting. *They're interested in the same things.*
Note that *to be interested in* is *at interessere sig for*.
- 25 Så bliver Hans og Jette tilovers. *That leaves Hans and Jette.*
tilovers is another of the old forms with -s after til. It means left over, remaining, spare, unwanted:
Jeg har 3 kr. tilovers I've got 3 kroner left, I've got 3 kroner (more than I need);
Han er tilovers her He's not wanted here.

26 Men de sidder jo i samme skolenævn, så de hygger sig sikkert godt sammen. *But they're on the same parents' council, so they'll probably get on well together.*

a et skolenævn parents' council (lit. school board) is a body of about six parents at a school, having the right to plan education, appoint a headmaster, etc.

b at hygge sig to make oneself comfortable, feel at home, get on well, have a nice time:

Jeg hygger mig både alene og med min familie. *I get on well both alone and with my family.*

Jørgensens kommer "hjem". *The Jørgensens come "home".*

27 "Så er vi der", som Svend sagde, da vi kom fra lufthavnen. *"Here we are", as Svend said when we came from the airport.*

28 Jeg skynder mig ind og ringer på. *I'll dash out and ring the bell.*
at skynde sig is to hurry, dash

29 Tak Else, især for ordet hjem. *Thank you, Else, especially for the word "home".*

30 Jeg føler mig virkelig hjemme hos jer. *I really feel at home in your house.*

31 I har skyndt jer, ikke? *You've hurried, haven't you?*

32 Vi regnede ikke med, at I kunne være her før om en halv time. *We weren't expecting you for another half hour* (lit. we didn't expect that you could be here before another half hour).

33 Hej, Bjørn. Hvor er du blevet brun! *Hi, Bjørn! What a nice tan you've got!* (lit. How you've become brown!)
brun brown is often used to mean suntanned.

Lektion toogtyve

Svends fødselsdag

Lesson twenty-two

Svend's birthday

What happens

The Jensens and their guests move the furniture round and prepare the room for Svend's birthday party the following day. On the morning of his birthday Svend is presented with a tiled table and rocking-chair from Else and Lene, and two silver candlesticks from the Jørgensens. The young people have been up since early morning, doing the shopping and baking.

New words in this lesson

alt for too	overfor opposite
at bage to bake	en plade (-r) leaf
en centimeter (-) centimetre	en skat (-te) darling
et chatol (-ler) bureau	skråt diagonally
der that	at skubbes be pushed
enestående outstanding, excellent	en sofa (-er) sofa
flyttemænd furniture removers	som that, which
at flyttes be moved	et spisebord (-e) dining-table
en forlængelse (-r) continuation	en stage (-r) candlestick
fortjent deserved	en sølvsestage (-r) silver candlestick
en fødselsdagsgave (-r) birthday present	at takke thank
et grøntorv (-e) vegetable market	tegnet designed
en gyngestol (-e) rocking chair	toogtyve twenty-two
en gæstfrihed hospitality	toogtyvende twenty-second
holder hold	tung heavy
hvad for which	at åbne open
en kakkal (-kler) tile	
et kakkelbord (-e) tiled table	alt for galt too much
et klaver (-er) piano	at få lov get permission
et kort (-) card	at sove til middag have an afternoon nap
en kælder (-dre) cellar, basement	at stille i forlængelse af be added on to
en lykke luck, happiness	at sætte på plads tidy up
løfter lift	til lykke congratulations, happy birthday
en mængde (-r) a lot	
en oldemor great-grandmother	
en overdel (-e) top	

Notes

"Flyttemænd" "Furniture removers"

- 1 Jeg kender ikke nogen, der er så gode til at hjælpe, som jer. *I don't know anybody who's as good at helping as you (are).*

At kende to know (jeg kender, jeg kendte, jeg har kendt) is used in the sense of *to be acquainted with*, usually when speaking of a thing or person:

Kender du ham? *Do you know him?*

Kender du den bog? *Do you know that book?* etc.

In other cases **at vide** is used:

Ved du, hvem det er? *Do you know who it is?*

Ved du det ikke? *Don't you know (that)?*

Jeg har aldrig vidst det. *I've never known that.*

Du ved ikke ret meget. *You don't know very much.*

- 2 **Hvad er det for møbler, vi skal flytte?** *Which furniture are we going to move?*

a **møbler** *furniture* is the plural of **et møbel** *a piece of furniture*.

b **Hvad for** is often used, especially at the beginning of a sentence to mean *which*: **Hvad for en/et?** *Which (one)?* **Hvad for nogle?** *Which (ones)?* (L14 N1).

c **møbler, vi skal flytte** *furniture we're going to move* You could also say **møbler, som vi skal flytte** *furniture which we are going to move*; but this sounds heavy, and the relative (**som**) can be omitted, as in English.

- 3 **Klaveret, der står der, skal flyttes herhen.** *The piano, which is (over) there, has to be moved over here.*

a **Klaveret, der står der**, could also read **Klaveret, som står der**,

b **flyttes** *be moved* from the verb **at flytte** *to move, remove*:

Man flytter møbler *You remove furniture, you move furniture*;

Man flytter til en anden lejlighed *You move to another flat.*

en flyttemand is a furniture remover.

- 4 **Det gamle chatol, som jeg har arvet fra oldemor, må I passe godt på.**

You must be very careful with the old bureau which I got from my great-grandmother.

a This sentence could also read **I må passe godt på det gamle chatol, som jeg har arvet fra oldemor**; but frequently in Danish people start with the most important idea, as here. Danish sentence structure is basically the same as the English, although more flexible. The finite verb is always the second element in the sentence, but it can be preceded by almost any other element (subject, direct or indirect object, adverb or adverbial phrase, or subordinate clause); i.e. if anything other than the subject starts the main clause of a sentence, subject and verb are reversed. **Jeg giver dig bogen nu** *I'll give you the book now* could also read **Bogen giver jeg dig nu**, **Dig giver jeg bogen nu**, and **Nu giver jeg dig bogen**. It is considered poor style to begin all sentences the same way.

b **arvet fra** is the same as **arvet efter** (see L5).

c **oldemor** *great-grandmother*; **great-grandfather** is **oldefar** (like **bedstemor** and **bedstefar**, L5 N17). **Great-grandparents** are **oldeforældre**; **great-great-grandparents** (**tipoldeforældre**) are **tipoldefar** *great-great-grandfather* and **tipoldemor** *great-great-grandmother*.

- 5 **Det skal skubbes 5 cm (fem centimeter) til venstre.** *It must be moved two inches (lit. five centimetres) to the left.*

6 **Sofaen, som jeg plejer at sove til middag på, skal ind i den anden stue.** *The sofa (which) I usually have my afternoon nap on must go into the other room.*

7 **Det ekstra bord, som I må bære op fra kælderen, skal stilles i forlængelse af spisebordet.** *The extra table which you must carry up from the basement must be added on to (lit. put in continuation of) the dining-table.*

8 **Der skal sættes plader i det,** *You must extend it (lit. Leaves must be put in it),*

a **sættes** *be put* is the passive of **at sætte** and means the same as **stilles** (N7).

b **plader** (here) *additional leaves in a table*. **En plade** can mean any flat object: **en grammofonplade** *a record*. A leaf on a tree is **et blad**.

9 **så det bliver langt nok.** *to make it (lit. so that it gets) long enough.*

10 **Skal vi ikke først allesammen flytte det tungeste, nemlig klaveret?** *Shouldn't we all (together) move the heaviest thing, the piano, first of all?*

11 **Så tager vi chatollet, som fire af os kan løfte, mens de to andre holder på overdelen.** *Then we'll take the bureau, which four of us can lift, while the other two hold the top.*

overdelen *top* (lit. *upper part*) There are many words for *top* in Danish beginning with **over**.

Flere forberedelser *More preparations*

12 **Så kan I, Bjørn og Lene, tage det, der skal op fra kælderen, mens Lise og Else sætter på plads efter os.** *Then you, Lene and Bjørn, can take the things which must come up from the basement, while Lise and Else tidy up after us.*

a **en kælder** (plural **kældre**) means *cellar, basement*.

b **at sætte på plads** *to tidy up, put things in their place*

13 **Hvor skal vi få de stole, vi mangler, fra?** (From) *where can we get the chairs we need?*

Note the word order in this sentence. This sort of construction is frequently used, although one would usually write **Hvorfra skal vi få**

- de stole, vi mangler? or Hvor skal vi få de manglende stole fra?
- 14 Dem har vi fået lov at låne af Holms, der bor i det hvide hus, som ligger skråt overfor. *We can (lit. we have been allowed to) borrow them from the Holms, who live in that white house (which lies) diagonally opposite.*
- a at få lov til to be allowed to, to get permission to.
- b som ligger skråt overfor (which) is diagonally opposite could also read der ligger skråt overfor; but som is used to avoid repetition of der.
- c at låne af to borrow from; at låne (til) to lend (to) (L6 N21).
- 15 Ja, lad os det. Jeg ved, Holms er hjemme nu. *Yes, let's (lit. Yes, let us that). I know the Holms are at home now.*
- ved See N1.

Mandag morgen Monday morning

- 16 Til lykke, Svend! *Happy birthday, Svend!*
Til lykke (lit. to happiness) *Happy birthday, congratulations.*
- 17 Nu skal du først åbne dine pakker, som vi har lagt på kakkeltbordet derovre. *Now first you must open your parcels, which we've put on the tiled table over there.*
- 18 Ja, Lene har tegnet bordet, som jeg så har lavet kaklerne til. *Yes, Lene designed the table, which I then made the tiles for.*
kakkelborde tiled tables are often used in Denmark.
- 19 Er den smukke gyngestol også en fødselsdagsgave? *Is that beautiful rocking-chair also a birthday present?*
- 20 Det er virkelig alt for meget. *It's really much too much.*
- 21 Nej, min skat, hvis nogen har fortjent det, er det dig. *No, darling, if anybody's deserved it, it's you.*
- a skat L11 N24a
- b er det dig it's you (lit. is it you). Note the inversion in the main clause when the subordinate clause comes first.
- 22 Nu må jeg se, hvad der er i den store pakke. *Now I must see what's in the big parcel.*
When a relative other than som or der is the subject of a subordinate clause, it has to be followed by der:
Kan du se, hvem der sidder i bilen? *Can you see who's sitting in the car?*
Compare this with
Kan du se, hvem han sidder ved siden af? *Can you see who he's sitting next to?*
in which han, and not hvem, is the subject of the clause.
- 23 Hvad står der på kortet? *What does the card say?*
- 24 "Til lykke og tak for enestående gæstfrihed." *"Happy birthday and thanks for (your) excellent hospitality."*

- 25 Aldrig har jeg set en stage, som jeg så godt kunne lide. *I've never seen a candlestick I liked so much.*
- a har jeg The subject and verb are inverted because the adverb aldrig comes first.
- 26 Det er virkelig alt for galt. *It's really all too much.*
alt for galt, like alt for meget (N20) means much too much.
- 27 Jeg ved slet ikke, hvordan jeg skal takke jer. *I really don't know how to thank you.*
slet is used with negations for emphasis: slet ikke really not, not at all; slet ingen nobody at all, absolutely no one.
- 28 De kommer straks på bordet. *Let's put them on the table right away.*
(lit. They'll get straight on to the table).
- 29 Det ser næsten kongeligt ud med alt det sølv. *It looks almost royal with all that silver.*
kongelig royal comes from en konge king.
- 30 Lene har været tidligt oppe at bage, og Bjørn har været på grønttorvet, hvor han har købt en mængde blomster. *Lene's been up early to bake, and Bjørn's been to the market and bought a lot of flowers.*

Lektion treogtyve

Lesson twenty-three

What happens

Svend's birthday party is a great success, and is praised by all the guests. One of them, Erik, has suggested that they should have parties more often, and has invited all the others to a party at his house a few days later. Bjørn and Lene offer to do the shopping, and go to the supermarket for vegetables and fruit.

Tirsdag, den niogtyvende
juni

Thursday, the twenty-ninth
of June

23 New words in this lesson

en agurk (-er) cucumber, gherkin	et indkøb (-) purchase, shopping
en appelsin (-er) orange	et kilo (-) kilogram
en asparges (-) asparagus	en kurv (-e) basket
(en) blomkål cauliflower	(en) kål cabbage
en blomme (-r) plum	livlig animated
en borddame (-r) dinner partner (lady)	(en) persille parsley
en bordherre (-r) dinner partner (gentleman)	en porre (-r) leek
en citron (-er) lemon	en pose (-r) bag
endnu still	et pund (-) pound
en fersken (-ner) peach	(et) purløg chives
en fest (-er) party	en pære (-r) pear
foreslog suggested	et sammenslutningsgilde (-r) party
fortalte told, said	et selskab (-er) party
en frugt (-er) fruit	svarede answered
færre fewer	tiere more often
få few	en tomat (-er) tomato
græske Greek	treogtyve twenty-three
grøn salat lettuce	vellykket successful
en gulerod (-rødder) carrot	
en havefest (-er) garden party	at få råd til get the money for
hjælp helped	at holde fest hold a party
ialt altogether	først på måneden early in the month
imellem between	i lange tider for a long time
importerede imported	på indkøb shopping

Notes

After festen After the party

- Tak for i går, alle tre.** Thanks for yesterday, all (three) of you.
In Denmark it is customary to thank people the next time you see people after receiving hospitality, or else to phone them. **Tak for i går** thank you for yesterday, **tak for i aftes** thank you for last night, and **tak for sidst** thank you for the last time (we saw each other) are the most commonly used expressions. When you leave it is **tak for i dag** or **tak for i aften**.
- Det var det livligste og mest vellykkede selskab, jeg nogensinde har været til.** It was the liveliest and most successful party I've ever been to.
 - livligst og mest vellykket** liveliest and most successful are the superlatives of **livlig** and **vellykket** (L13 N3). **Livlig** means lively, animated, and can also be used to describe persons.

- selskab party** can be used for all sorts of parties or gatherings. **Fest** is used of festive occasions, and usually implies that there is something to celebrate, so it is mostly used in words for special occasions such as **fødselsdagsfest birthday party**, **sankthansfest midsummer party**, etc. **Gilde** is used for much larger, less formal parties.
- det livligste og mest vellykkede selskab, jeg nogensinde har været til** could also read **det livligste og mest vellykkede selskab, som jeg nogensinde har været til**.
- Min borddame, Lisbeth, sagde også, at hun aldrig havde moret sig så godt.** My dinner partner, Lisbeth, also said that she had never enjoyed herself so much, (lit. well),
Remember that **at sige** is irregular: **jeg siger, jeg sagde, jeg har sagt**.
- ... og Trine og Grethe, som jeg sad imellem, fortalte, at de havde glædet sig til den fest i lange tider.** ... and Trine and Grethe, whom I sat between, said they'd been looking forward (lit. had looked forward) to that party for a long time.
 - jeg sad I sat, I was sitting, (de) fortalte they said** are the past tenses of two irregular verbs: **at sidde** (jeg sidder, jeg sad, jeg har siddet), and **at fortælle** (jeg fortæller, jeg fortalte, jeg har fortalt).
 - i lange tider for a long time** is a more emphatic expression than **i lang tid**.
- Min bordherre, Erik, mente, at man skulle holde fest noget tiere.** My dinner partner, Erik, thought (that) we (lit. one) should have parties (lit. a party) a bit more often.
 - Note the expression **at holde fest to have a party**.
 - There are two words for **often** in Danish: **ofte** and **tit**. They are compared as follows:

ofte	} often	oftere	} more often	oftest	} most often
tit		tiere		tiest	
- men sagde han også, hvordan man kunne få råd til det?** But did he also say where (lit. how) we were going to get the money?
at få råd til is to get the money (for something); compare it with **at have råd til** to afford, have the money for.
- Nej, men han foreslog, at man lavede sammenslutningsgilder.** No, but he suggested having (lit. that one made) "sammenslutningsgilder".
 - A **sammenslutningsgilde** is a party to which each member contributes a share of the expenses or provisions.
 - at foreslå to suggest** is another irregular verb: **jeg foreslår, jeg foreslog, jeg har foreslået**.
 - at holde fest/gilde/selskab** is to have a party; **at lave et sammenslutningsgilde** is to arrange a bring-your-own-bottle-and-food party.

- 8 Så ville folk ses noget oftere. *Then people would see each other a bit more often.*
- 9 Jeg spurgte ham, hvornår han ville holde sammenskudsgilde. *I asked him when he was going to have a party.*
Jeg spurgte *I asked* is from **at spørge**; **jeg spørger**, **jeg spurgte**, **jeg har spurgt**.
- 10 —at han nok skulle invitere os allesammen. —*that he would gladly invite all of us.*
nok enough, sufficiently or (as here) gladly is often used to indicate a promise or assertion.
- 11 På fredag. Han og hans kone lovede, at de ville holde stor havefest. *On Friday. He and his wife promised that they would have a big garden party.*
- 12 Det bliver 2.7. (den anden juli). *That will be the 2nd of July.*
2.7. den anden juli, den anden i syvende the second of July, the second of the seventh is a more formal way of writing the date than **den 2. juli**. It is usually used in commercial correspondence.
- 13 Det er først på måneden, hvor folk har penge endnu. *It's early in the month, when people still have money.*
- 14 Jeg lovede, at Bjørn og jeg kom og hjalp dem med indkøbene. *I promised that Bjørn and I would come and help them with the shopping.*
a In the present this sentence would read **Jeg lover dem, at Bjørn og jeg kommer og hjælper dem med indkøbene**. *I promise them that Bjørn and I will come (lit. come) and help them with the shopping.* You will remember that the present can be used with future meaning—**Bjørn og jeg kommer** *Bjørn and I will come*. Similarly, the past tense can be used to mean a "future in the past"—**Jeg lovede dem, at Bjørn og jeg kom** *I promised them that Bjørn and I would come (lit. came)*.
b **et indkøb** purchase; (plural) **indkøb** purchases, shopping. **At gå på indkøb** is to go shopping.

Lene og Bjørn på indkøb *Lene and Bjørn go shopping*

- 15 Vi skal lige se, hvad Erik har skrevet, at han ønsker, vi skal købe. *We must just see what Erik has written down for us to buy (lit. We must just see what Erik has written that he wants (that) we shall buy).*
a **at han ønsker, vi skal købe** *that he wants us to buy*. Both these clauses can be used with or without **at**: **han ønsker, at vi skal købe** or **han ønsker, vi skal købe** or **at han ønsker, at vi skal købe** are all correct.
b **han ønsker, vi skal købe** Note the difference in construction between Danish and English with **at ønske** to wish.
- 16 Vi skal have kartofler, men de skal være nye. *We want (lit. must have)*

- potatoes, but they must be new (ones).
- 17 Vi bliver 40 (fyrre) ialt, og der skal være $\frac{1}{2}$ pund (et halvt pund) til hver, så det bliver 20 pund. *There'll be forty of us altogether, and we want half a pound each, so that will be 20 pounds (lit. We shall be 40 altogether, and there must be half a pound for each one, so that will be 20 lbs).*
et pund (plural **pund**) a pound The metric system has been used officially in Denmark since 1912, but some people still talk of pounds, particularly when talking of their weight, or when buying things such as butter or potatoes. A Danish pound (**et dansk pund**) is $\frac{1}{2}$ kg. (**et halvt kilo**) or 500 grams, i.e. just over the British pound.
- 18 De ligger i poser med et kilo. Altså skal vi have 10 poser. *They're in one-kilo bags, so we must have ten bags.*
a **poser med et kilo**, **kiloposer**, and **poser à et kilo** are all equally valid expressions for one-kilo bags; similarly **Cigaretter sælges i pakker med tyve**, **pakker à tyve**, **tyvestykspakker**. *Cigarettes are sold in packets of twenty.*
b **et kilo** The international abbreviations for the metric system of weights and measures are used in Denmark:
1 g (et gram) one gram; **1 kg** (et kilogram or et kilo) 1 kilo; **1 m** (en meter) one metre; **1 km** (en kilometer) 1 kilometre.
- 19 Kan du se, hvor der er porrer, gulerødder og asparges? *Can you see where the leeks, carrots and asparagus are?* (lit. can you see where there are leeks, carrots and asparagus?)
en gulerod (plural **gulerødder**) comes from **en rod** a root.
- 20 Det er altså sammen herovre. *It's all over here.*
- 21 Nej, hvor porrerne er dyre! *Gosh, how expensive the leeks are!*
- 22 Vi tager lidt færre, end Erik har skrevet, så tager vi lidt flere gulerødder. *We'll take (a little) fewer than Erik said (lit. has written), and (lit. then) take a few more carrots.*
a **færre** fewer from **få** few; fewest is **færrest**.
b Do not confuse **flere** with **mere**; they both mean more, but **flere** is used of things which can be counted, and **mere** of things which cannot (L12 N23):
Vil du have mere kaffe og flere kager? *Will you have more coffee and (more) cakes?*
- 23 Vi skal også have persille og purløg. Det tager jeg. *We must also have parsley and chives. I'll take that.*
purløg is both singular and plural. The ending **løg** means onion(s) and is also found in **hvidløg** garlic.
- 24 Agurker, tomater, grøn salat og blomkål ligger her. *(The) cucumbers, tomatoes, lettuce, and cauliflowers are here.*

- a Agurker *cucumbers, gherkins*; gherkins are also called små agurker.
 b kål(en) means *cabbage*; hvidkål, rødkål, blomkål, and rosenkål are (*white*) *cabbage*, *red cabbage*, *cauliflower*, and *Brussels sprouts*.
 25 Det lægger jeg i kurven. *I'll put it (lit. that) in the basket.*
 26 Så skal vi have frugt. *Then we must get (lit. have) fruit.* frugt *fruit*; the plural is *frugter*.
 27 Her er danske blommer og kirsebær. *There are some Danish plums and cherries here.* bær *berry* is the same in the singular and plural.
 28 Der er nogle æbler og pærer, der er importerede. *There are some imported apples and pears.*
 a The apples and pears are imported because these fruits are only ripe in Denmark at the end of August.
 b en pære is a *pear*; but en elektrisk pære is a *light bulb*. (A flower bulb, however, is et blomsterløg.)
 29 Citroner og appelsiner ligger her, og der er nogle dejlige græske ferskner. *(The) lemons and oranges are here, and there are some nice Greek peaches.*

Lektion fireogtyve I supermarkedet

Lesson twenty-four In the supermarket

What happens

Lene and Bjørn go to the supermarket to get the food for the big party they are planning. They buy different kinds of meat for open sandwiches, cheese, butter and wine. It all looks a lot, but Lene reminds Bjørn of their forefathers, the Vikings. Finally they get bread, disposable plates, and paper napkins. Bjørn is surprised to see a young man covered with tattoos.

New words in this lesson

alverdens from all over the world	brie Brie
en arm (-e) arm	et bryst chest
blandet mixed	camembert Camembert

danablu Danish blue	en plasticpose (-r) plastic bag
drikkevarer drinks	(et) pålæg sandwich topping
drukket drunk	(en) roastbeef roast beef
et engangsservice set of disposable tableware	rosé rosé
England England	et rugbrød (-) rye bread
(en) fars forcemeat	en rullepølse (-r) pork roll
at feste celebrate	røget smoked
fireogtyve twenty-four	en salat (-er) salad
fireogtyvende twenty-fourth	selvfølgelig of course
(et) flæskeskud pork	sikkert probably
forloren mock	en skildpadde (-r) turtle
et franskbød (-) white bread	(en) skinke (-r) ham
fuld full	(en) sky meat jelly
fuld drunk	en slags (-) sort
en fyr (-e) fellow, chap	(et) smør butter
hakket chopped	en sommernat (-nætter) summer night
hamburgerryg smoked ham	en spegepølse (-r) salami
en hvidvin (-e) white wine	stammer descend
hvilke which	en sømand (-mænd) sailor
en kiks (-) biscuit	tatoveret tattooed
(et) kød meat	en tatovering (-er) tattoo
en masse (-r) lot	en viking (-er) Viking
en mave (-r) stomach	en vogn (-e) trolley
en medisterpølse (-r) pork sausage	ædt gorged
Normandiet Normandy	
opførte sig behaved	at få af get off
overladt left	at gå i land go ashore
en pakke (-r) packet	de der those
en papirdug (-e) paper tablecloth	den der that
en papirserviet (-ter) paper napkin	for resten by the way

Notes

Mad Food

- 1 Hvor skal vi nu hen? *Where shall we go now?*
- 2 Over i afdelingen med kød og pålæg. *Over to the department which sells meat and sandwich toppings.*
 pålæg is everything which is put on smørrebrød (open sandwiches) (L11 N6a).
- 3 Det har Erik overladt til mig. *Erik's left that to me.*
- 4 Hvilke slags pålæg skal vi have? *Which sorts of "pålæg" shall we get?*
 a Hvilke which ends in -e because slags here is plural. (The singular is hvilken or hvilket.) Most Danish interrogatives begin with hv (the h is not pronounced):

hvor where; **hvorhen** where to; **hvorfra** where from;
 hvem who, whom; **hvis** whose;
 hvad what; **hvilken, hvilket, hvilke** which; **hvad for** which (mostly used
 instead of **hvilken, hvilket, hvilke**);
 hvordan how; **hvorledes** = **hvordan**, but is seldom used;
 hvorfor why

- b **Pålæg** has no plural; **slags** kinds is used when talking of
 different kinds of **pålæg**:
Der er fem slags pålæg på bordet. Skal vi have en slags til? *There are
 five kinds of sandwich topping on the table. Shall we have another?*
- c In more casual language this sentence could be **Hvad for noget
 pålæg skal vi have?**
- 5 **Lad os se, hvad de har.** *Let's see what they've got.*
- 6 **Der er spegepølse, to slags rullepølse, leverpostej, sky, hamburgerryg,
 røget skinke, roastbeef og forskellige salater.** *(There's) salami, two
 kinds of pork roll, liver pâté, meat jelly, cured saddle of pork, smoked
 ham, roast beef and various salads.*
- a There are many kinds of sausage (**pølse**) and cold meat in Denmark.
Spegepølse is similar to salami, but is made with different spices.
Rullepølse is pressed meat and is usually made of pork, although veal
 and lamb can also be used. Every good butcher has a **rullepølse** of his
 own. **Hamburgerryg** is cured saddle of pork, which is served hot for
 dinner or cold as **pålæg**. **Sky** is a meat jelly eaten on top of
leverpostej, spegepølse, or rullepølse.
- b **roastbeef** is pronounced various ways in Denmark, often as in English.
- c **en salat** is meat, fish, fruit, or other things, mixed up with mayonnaise.
- 7 **Vi tager lidt af det alt sammen.** *We'll take a bit of everything.*
- 8 **Hvilket pålæg kan du lide?** *What kinds of "pålæg" do you like?*
 You could also say **Hvad for noget pålæg kan du lide?** **Hvilket** is with a
 -t because **pålæg** is neuter.
- 9 **Alt det, du har købt.** *All the ones you've bought.*
- 10 **Skal vi ikke tage lidt medisterpølse, en to-tre mørbrad og lidt fars?**
*Shouldn't we get (lit. take) a little pork sausage, two or three
 tenderloins and a little forcemeat?*
- a **medisterpølse** a kind of pork sausage is usually eaten hot for dinner.
- b **en to-tre mørbrad** two or three tenderloins **En** is often used with
 plural numbers to indicate an approximate amount, such as *some* in
some twenty hours later.
- c **en fars** force-meat, stuffing is mostly made at home from chopped
 meat, etc., but can be bought ready-made.
- 11 **Ja, lidt blandet flæske- og kalvekød til frikadeller og noget hakket
 oksekød til hakkebøf.** *Yes, a little mixed pork and veal for rissoles,*

and some minced beef for hamburgers.

- 12 **Der er også nogle plasticposer med forløren skildpadde.** *There are
 some plastic bags of mock turtle, too.*
- 13 **Jeg henter en til.** *I'll fetch another one.*
 en til another one See L19 N3b.
- 14 **Hvad for varer skal vi nu have?** *What sort of things must we get now?*
- 15 **Samsø og Maribo kan de fleste lide.** *Most people like Samsø and
 Maribo.*
Samsø and **Maribo** are two of the most popular Danish cheeses.
 (Samsø is an island, Maribo a town.)
- 16 **Vi skal også have brie, camembert og danablue.** *We must also have
 Brie, Camembert and Danish blue.*
brie, camembert, danablue are the Danish versions of the French
 cheeses.
- 17 **Skal vi tage nogle pakker smør?** *Shall we take some packets of
 butter?*
- 18 **Ja, tag nogle pakker med et halvt pund.** *Yes, take some half-pound
 packets.*

Drikkevarer Drinks

- 19 **Drikkevarer** *drinks* means drinks in general, e.g. bottles of drink in the
 supermarket; **en drink** (L4) is a drink once it has been poured out.
- 20 **Hvilken vin skal vi tage?** *Which wine shall we take?*
Hvilken ends in -n to agree with **vin**, which is common gender. You
 could also say **Hvad for en vin, Hvad slags vin** (*What kind of wine*)
 and **Hvilken slags vin**.
- 21 **Den rødvin der er god, og så skal vi have den her hvidvin.** *That red
 wine's good, and (then) we must have this white wine.*
Den rødvin der, den her hvidvin *That red wine, this white wine* (lit. *The
 red wine there, the here white wine*).
 The position of **der** and **her** is a matter of style; it is equally correct to
 say **den rødvin der** and **den der rødvin**.
- 22 **For resten må vi også have noget vin rosé.** *By the way, we must also
 have some rosé wine.*
- 23 **Det er der mange, der foretrækker i den varme.** *Many prefer that in
 this heat* (lit. *That there are many who prefer in this heat*).
- 24 **Hvem skal spise og drikke det altsammen?** *Who's going to eat and
 drink all that?*
- 25 **Det skal du nok få at se.** *You'll see* (lit. *That will you (enough) get to
 see*)!
- 26 **Jeg troede, du havde set danskerne feste i den lyse sommernat.** *I*

thought you'd seen the Danes celebrate in the light summer night. **at feste** and **at fejre** to celebrate are synonymous, but **at fejre** is transitive (i.e. it must be followed by an object), whereas **at feste** is not:

Svend fejrer sin fødselsdag Svend's celebrating his birthday, but Gæsterne fester hele natten. The guests celebrate the whole night through.

- 27 Glem ikke, at vi allesammen stammer fra vikingerne. Don't forget that we're all descended from the Vikings.
- 28 Hvordan tror du, de opførte sig, når de gik i land i England og Normandiet? How do you think they behaved when they went ashore in England and Normandy?
at opføre sig to behave (oneself) is always reflexive:
Opfør dig ordentligt!—Jeg opfører mig altid ordentligt. Behave yourself!—I always behave (well).
- 29 Mon ikke de har ædt og drukket, til maven var fuld, og de selv var fulde? I bet they ate and drank until their stomachs were full and they (themselves) were drunk.
- a Mon ikke I suppose, I bet
- b at æde is used of animals eating, although it can be used disparagingly (as here) of humans as well, meaning to eat greedily, to gorge. It is a strong verb: han æder, han åd, han har ædt.
- c fulde means both full and drunk. Of course the pun cannot be translated.
- 30 Vi skal også have franskbrød, rugbrød og en hel masse forskellige kiks. We must also have white bread, rye bread, and lots of different biscuits.
- a et franskbrød (lit. a French bread, a French loaf) is used for a loaf of white bread, but not for rolls. The k in franskbrød is not pronounced.
- b (et) rugbrød (plural rugbrød) means (a loaf of) rye bread.
- c en masse, en mængde, en hel masse, en hel mængde all mean a lot, lots (of), a whole lot.
- d en kiks (plural kiks) a biscuit; sweet biscuits are småkager (lit. small cakes) and are often home-baked.
- 31 Så mangler vi bare papirservietter og noget engangsservice: kopper, tallerkener, og glas. Then all we need are paper napkins and some disposable cups, plates and glasses (lit. Then there lack only paper napkins and some disposable tableware: cups, plates and glasses).
et engangsservice is disposable tableware, from en gang once and service service, set.
- 32 Tror du ikke, vi skal have nogle papirduge? Don't you think we should get some paper table cloths?
- 33 Selvfølgelig. Vi må have seks. Vi tager de røde der. De passer bedst til

årstidens blomster. Of course. We must have six. We'll take those red ones. They'll go best with the flowers in season (lit. the season's flowers).

Sømanden The sailor

- 34 Har du set den unge fyr derovre? Han er tatoveret på både hænder og arme, og man kan se, at han også har tatoveringer på brystet. Have you seen the young fellow over there? He's got tattoos (lit. he is tattooed) on both his hands and arms, and you can see that he's also got tattoos on his chest.
- 35 Han har sikkert været i Nyhavn. He's probably been to Nyhavn. Nyhavn (lit. New Harbour) is a street in Copenhagen, beginning at Kongens Nytorv and leading to the dock, with a canal forming a narrow harbour in the middle. There are many beautiful old houses there, as well as restaurants and bars for the many sailors who come there. Some of the tattooers are world-famous among sailors.
- 36 Der kommer alverdens sømænd og bliver tatoverede. Det er jo bare ikke til at få af igen. Sailors come from all over the world and get tattooed. Only you can't get it off again.
at få af is to get (something) off. To get rid of (a person or thing) is at blive af med:
Hun er ikke til at blive af med. I can't get rid of her.

What happens

The day after the party Lise has a headache and Bjørn a stomach-ache, but they all agree that it was an excellent party. The Jørgensens start to plan all the things they have to do before they leave. They are going southwards on a tour through Europe, and Svend, who is going to Jutland on a business trip, is taking them part of the way. The telephone rings, but it turns out to be a wrong number, which annoys Else because it happens too often. Finally the Jørgensens say goodbye to their hosts. Lene and Bjørn will miss each other, but Bjørn will be back soon, when he comes to university in Copenhagen after the holidays.

New words in this lesson

alvorligt serious(ly)	en likør (-er) liqueur
en barber (-er) barber	en læge (-r) doctor
en brødkniv (-e) breadknife	en mavepine (-r) stomach-ache
en damefrisør (-er) ladies' hairdresser	mærkeligt remarkable
cognac cognac	en nakke (-r) back of the neck
at danse dance	nul zero
desuden also, furthermore	et område (-r) area
derpå after	ondt ache
at dreje dial	at permanente have a perm
femogtyvende twenty-fifth	rart nice
en ferie (-r) holiday	en ret (-ter) dish
en film (-) film	en rose (-r) rose
en filmsapparat (-er) ciné camera	at se til see, visit
en forretningsrejse (-r) business trip	sekscifrede six-figure
et fotografiapparat (-er) camera	en skadestue (-r) casualty ward
fremkalder develop (film)	skar cut
et fremmedsprog (-) foreign language	et skær (-) light
(en) fuldmåne full moon	skærer cut
halvanden one and a half	en terrasse (-r) terrace
et hospital (-er) hospital	udenlandske foreign
irriterende irritating	
klar over aware of	at have ondt ache
klipper cut	at være klar over realize, be aware
at klippes have a haircut	dagen derpå the morning after, the
at komme til manage	next day
en krølle (-r) curl	et halvt år six months

Notes

Dagen derpå The morning after

- Dagen derpå** *The morning after* (lit. *the next day*) does not mean quite the same as **næste dag**; there is a slight suggestion of a hangover in **dagen derpå**!
- Sikken en fest i går!** *What a party yesterday!*
- Det var skønt at danse på terrassen i fuldmånens skær.** *It was lovely to dance on the terrace in the light of the full moon.*
 - at danse to dance** is regular. *A dance* is **en dans**.
 - et skær light** is a rather poetical word. Usually *moonlight* is **måneskin(net)**, as *sunshine* is **solskin(net)**.
- Men jeg er lidt træt og har lidt ondt i hovedet i dag.** *But I'm a bit tired, and I've got a slight headache today.*
jeg har lidt ondt lit. *I have (a) little pain*; **at have ondt** is *to have an ache*:
jeg har ondt i hovedet or **jeg har hovedpine** *I have a headache*;
Jeg har ondt i maven or **jeg har mavepine** *I have a stomach-ache*;
Jeg har ondt i halsen *I have got a sore throat*;
Jeg har ondt i øret, ørerne *I have earache*.
- Men det er ikke mærkeligt efter de syvogtyve (27) forskellige retter,** *But that's not surprising after all the different dishes* (lit. *the twenty-seven different dishes*),
 - syvogtyve twenty-seven** is an arbitrary figure for a large number of things, rather like 1001 in English.
 - en ret** is *a dish, course*; but remember **at have ret to be right**.
- tre slags vin, øl, cognac og likør.** *three kinds of wine, beer, cognac and liqueur.*
 Note **tre slags vin** *three kinds of wine*, like **en kop kaffe** *a cup of coffee* (L2 N14b).

Planer for den sidste dag Plans for the last day

- Er I klar over, at vi har meget at skulle ordne i dag,** *Do you realise we've got a lot to see to today,*
 - at være klar over to realise, be aware of.** It is usual to say **er I klar over** rather than **er I klare over**, although both forms are correct.
 - Note **at skulle to have to**. Remember that the modal verbs have an infinitive in Danish, unlike English (L8 N15b).
- hvis vi skal rejse i overmorgen?** *if we're going to leave the day after tomorrow?*
at rejse can mean *to travel* or (as here) *to leave, go*.

- 9 **Ja, jeg skal til damefrisøren.** *Yes, I must go to the hairdresser's.*
en frisør is a hairdresser, barber; **en damefrisør** a ladies' hairdresser.
 Sometimes the word **damefrisørinde** is used, but nowadays the ending
-inde added to a man's job is not very popular.
- 10 **Jeg skal både klippes og permanentes.** *I must have my hair cut and
 permed (lit. both be cut and permed).*
 a **klippes** and **permanentes** are the passive of **at klippe** and **at permanente**.
 b **at klippe** means *to cut*, but only with **en saks** a pair of scissors.
- 11 **Både far og jeg skal til barberen.** *Both Dad and I are going to the
 barber's.*
- 12 **Vi trænger begge to til at klippes.** *We both need a haircut.*
- 13 **Du må ikke få klippet for meget af i nakken, Bjørn.** *You mustn't have
 too much taken off at the back, Bjørn.*
en nakke means the back of the head and neck; **en hals** (N4) is neck
 and throat.
- 14 **Det klæder dig så godt med de krøller.** *Those curls suit you so nicely
 (lit. It suits you so well with those curls).*
- 15 **Jeg skal nok sørge for at komme til at se ud, så du kan lide mig.**
*I'll try and have it done the way you like it (lit. I'll certainly manage to
 get to look so that you'll like me).*
- 16 **Jeg skal også have fremkaldt en film.** *I must also get a film developed.*
at fremkalde is *to develop* (a film):
Kan De fremkalde den film til i morgen? *Can you develop this film for
 tomorrow?*
 In other senses *to develop* is **at udvikle**.
- 17 **Desuden skal vi have købt film både til fotografiapparatet og
 filmsapparatet.** *We've also got to buy (lit. have bought) films for the
 camera and the ciné camera.*
 a **en film** is unchanged in the plural.
 b **et fotografiapparat** and **et filmsapparat** can also be called **et kamera**
 (or camera) and **et filmkamera**.
- 18 **Vi skal også på hospitalet og se til Bente.** *We must also go to the
 hospital and see Bente.*
 a **på hospitalet** *to the hospital*; **på universitetet** *to the university*; **på
 posthuset** *to the post office*.
 b **at se til** is usually used of seeing someone who is ill.
- 19 **Hun kom jo på skadestuen i går, da hun skar sig på brødkniven.** *She
 was taken (lit. she came) to the casualty ward yesterday, when she cut
 herself on the breadknife.*
 a **en skadestue** *casualty ward*, from **en skade** *injury, damage, hurt*, and
stue *room, ward*.

- b **skar** past tense of **at skære**, which is *to cut with a knife* as opposed to
at klippe which is *to cut with scissors* (N10).
- 20 **Lægen sagde, at det ikke var alvorligt, så hun kommer sikkert hjem om
 et par dage.** *The doctor said it wasn't serious, so she'll probably come
 home in a couple of days.*
så hun kommer sikkert hjem om et par dage could also read **så om et
 par dage kommer hun sikkert hjem**.
- 21 **Husk at tage nogle roser med fra haven til hende!** *Remember to take
 her some roses from the garden!*
med fra haven til hende could also read **med til hende fra haven** or **fra
 haven med til hende**.

Mandag 5.7. (den femte juli) *Monday 5th July*

- 22 **Det var telefonen. Undskyld et øjeblik.** *That was the 'phone. Excuse
 me a moment.*
- 23 **Nej, det er ikke hos Petersen.** *No, this isn't the Petersens' house.*
- 24 **Det er 01-området (nul-et-området).** *This is the 01-area.*
 Denmark has 9 **områder** *telephone areas*, numbered from 01 to 09,
 which are all followed by six-figured numbers. 01 is the dialling code
 for Copenhagen and its suburbs, 02 and 03 for the rest of Zealand,
 and 06 for the Århus area.
- 25 **Hvis De skal have Århus, skal De dreje 06 (nul-seks) foran det
 sekscifrede nummer.** *If you want Århus you must dial 06 before the
 six-figure number.*
at dreje (when speaking of the telephone) *to dial*; otherwise *to turn*.
- 26 **Det er irriterende. Der er en familie i Århus, der har samme nummer,
 som vi har.** *It's annoying. There's a family in Århus with (the) same
 number as we have.*
- 27 **Folk glemmer at dreje 06 (nul-seks), og Petersens har mange
 udenlandske venner.** *People forget to dial 06, and the Petersens have
 got a lot of foreign friends,*
udenlandsk *foreign* from **udlandet** *abroad, foreign countries*.
- 28 **så jeg må svare på 3-4 (tre-fire) fremmedsprog.** *so I have to answer in
 three or four foreign languages.*
et fremmedsprog *foreign language* is the same in the singular and
 plural.
- 29 **Nu må vi snart af sted.** *We'll have to leave soon.*
- 30 **Ja, det er jo rart for os, at vi kan køre med dig, nu du skal på
 forretningsrejse til Jylland i dag.** *Yes, it's nice for us that we can go
 with you, since you're going on a business trip to Jutland today.*

31 Bjørn, vi glæder os til, du kommer hjem til os, når du skal på universitetet efter ferien. *Bjørn, we're looking forward to your coming home to us when you start at the university after the holidays.*

a du skal på universitetet *you go to the university, start at the university. To go to the university is at gå på universitetet; but to go to school, go to church are at gå i skole, at gå i kirke.*

b en ferie is singular; the plural is *ferier*.

32 Tænk, at du skal bo her et halvt år. *Just think, you're going to live here for six months (lit. a half year).*
et halvt år *6 months (lit. a half year); et år or et helt år a (whole) year; halvandet år, et og et halvt år, 1½ år a year and a half, 18 months; to og et halvt år, 2½ år 2½ years.*

33 Det bliver dejligt at se jer alle tre hver dag. *It'll be nice to see you all (lit. the three of you) every day.*

34 Farvel, lille Lene. Jeg vil savne dig. *Goodbye, little Lene. I'll miss you.*
lille *little* is often used when you are friendly or affectionate towards younger people, but you have to be careful about using it.

35 Om 1½ (halvanden) måned er du her igen. På gensyn. *In a month and a half you'll be here again. Goodbye.*

a halvanden måned *one and a half months* After fractions nouns are always left in the singular in Danish; it is *halvanden måned* and not *halvanden måneder*:

17,50 kr. (sytten en halv krone) *seventeen and a half kroner; 7¼ time (syv en kvart time) seven and a quarter hours.*

b På gensyn *goodbye, see you soon, so long, au revoir*, is what you say when leaving people you are going to see again before long.

Lektion seksogtyve

Lesson twenty-six

Gennem Danmark

Travelling through Denmark

What happens

Svend and his guests drive west to Jutland and stop at a service station for oil and petrol. The Jørgensens say goodbye to Svend at a car-hire agency in Fredericia, and thank him for his hospitality. Bjørn asks a lady in the street the way to a bookshop. At the border they fill their tank with petrol to use up their Danish money and Bjørn goes to make a last phone call to Lene before he leaves Denmark.

New words in this lesson

almindelig regular, ordinary	et lufttryk air pressure
Belgien Belgium	Luxembourg Luxembourg
(en) benzin petrol	længes efter am looking forward to
en benzintank (-e) petrol pump	mod against, towards
en boghandel (-ler) book-shop	myldrede swarmed
at bruge spend	nydeligt pretty
derefter after that	en oktan octane
derfra from there	en olie (-r) oil
engelsk English	et ophold (-) stay
Flensborg Flensburg	parat ready
en fodgængerovergang (-e) pedestrian crossing	en parlør (-er) phrase-book
et fordæk (-) front tyre	en ring (-e) tyre
en forrude (-r) windscreen	at se efter check
Frankrig France	seksogtyvende twenty-sixth
fransk French	en servicestation service station
at fyldes be filled	at sige tell
en gade (-r) street	Slesvig Schleswig
et gadekryds street crossing	super super
at give give	Sydslesvig South Schleswig
godt fine	en tank (-e) tank
en grænse (-r) frontier	en tankpasser (-e) petrol pump attendant
hel all	et trafiklys traffic lights
hils remember me to	en turistattraktion (-er) tourist attraction
Holland Holland	tysk German
hollandsk Dutch	Tyskland Germany
et insekt (-er) insect	
klar mig manage	
knuste crushed	
en liter (-) litre	at have fat i get hold of
en luft air	Hvordan går det (med dig)? How are you?

I Svends bil på vej til Jylland *In Svend's car on the way to Jutland*

- 1 Jeg har næsten ikke mere benzin. *I've got hardly any petrol left. næsten ikke mere hardly any (lit. almost not more); Jeg kan næsten ikke spise mere I can hardly eat any more; Jeg kan næsten ikke se noget I can hardly see anything.*
- 2 Der er en benzintank derhenne. *There's a petrol pump over there. Benzintank petrol pump is often used as a synonym for servicestation.*

På servicestationen *At the service station*

- 3 Hvor mange liter skal vi give den? *How many litres shall we put in (lit. shall we give it)?*
 - a This is what most petrol pump attendants would say. The answer can be expressed either in terms of cost or quantity:
Jeg vil gerne have for 60 kroner *I'd like 60 kroner's worth* or Jeg vil gerne have 20 liter *I'd like 20 litres.*
 - b en liter (abbreviated l) is 0.22 gallon. It is divided into 10 dl (deciliter). 100 l One hundred litres are 1 hl (hektoliter).
- 4 Tanken skal fyldes helt op, *Fill up the tank (lit. the tank must be filled all up),*
- 5 Almindelig eller super? *Regular or super?*
- 6 Vil du også lige se efter olie og lufttrykket i ringene? *Please will you also check the oil and tyres (lit. oil and the air-pressure in the tyres)?*
 - a At service stations most people say **du** to each other.
 - b lige has many translations, but in most sentences (as here) it is simply used out of politeness.
 - c en ring a tyre consists of en slange inner tube and et dæk tyre; a tubeless tyre is et slangeløst dæk. Front and rear tyres are fordæk and bagdæk. En ring, in fact, can mean anything that is ring-shaped — a tyre, a ring, a collar, etc.
- 7 Der skal en liter olie på, *You need a litre of oil,*
- 8 og det højre fordæk skal have lidt luft. *and the right front tyre must have a little air.*
- 9 Nu skal jeg vaske vinduerne. *Now I'll wash the windows.*
- 10 Tak, der er en masse knuste insekter på forruden. *Thank you, there are a lot of squashed insects on the windscreen.*
 - a knust squashed, crushed, from at knuse to crush.
 - b en forrude windscreen, lit. front pane; the other windows of a car are bagrude rear window (lit. back pane) and sideruder or sidevinduer side windows.

I Fredericia ved en biludlejning *In Fredericia at a car-hire agency*

- 11 Hvilken vej vil I køre herfra? *Which way are you going (lit. driving) from here?*
- 12 Vi vil se Legoland. Det er jo en stor turistattraktion. *We want to see Legoland. It's a great tourist attraction.*
Legoland is a model village built of little plastic bricks by the firm which makes them.
- 13 Derfra kører vi sydpå mod grænsen. *From there we'll go south towards the border.*
 - a mod means both against and towards:
De kører mod grænsen. *They're driving towards the border.*
De kører mod et træ. *They're driving into (lit. against) a tree.*
Towards can sometimes be expressed by adding an adverb of direction to mod:
De kører hen mod et træ. *They're driving towards a tree.*
 - b en grænse frontier, border; the plural is grænser. Denmark has only one frontier, that with Germany.
- 14 Vi vil se et par steder i Sydslesvig *We want to see a few places in South Schleswig*
The southern part of Jutland is called Sønderjylland or Slesvig. It belonged to Germany between 1864 and 1920. In 1920 Nordslesvig (North Schleswig) was returned to Denmark, but South Schleswig remained German, keeping a Danish minority and some Danish schools.
- 15 og kører så ret hurtigt gennem Tyskland og ned gennem Holland, Belgien og Luxembourg til Frankrig. *and then we'll drive fairly quickly through Germany and down through Holland, Belgium and Luxembourg to France.*
- 16 Jeg vil lige finde en boghandel. *I just want to find a bookshop.*
The shop is en boghandel, the owner en boghandler.
- 17 Der er nogle danske bøger, jeg vil have fat i. *There are some Danish books I want to get hold of.*
 - a Note the plural of en bog: bøger.
 - b at have fat i or at få fat i to get hold of. The use of this expression depends on the word which precedes it:
Jeg skal have fat i *I must/am going to get hold of*
Jeg vil have fat i *I want to get hold of*
Jeg må have fat i *I must get hold of but*
Jeg kan få fat i *I can get hold of*
Jeg får fat i *I manage to get hold of.*

- 18 Undskyld, kan De sige mig, hvor jeg finder en boghandel? *Excuse me, but could you tell me where I can find a bookshop?*
- 19 Ja. Gå her op til højre til gadekrydset, hvor der er trafiklys. *Yes. Go up here to the right as far as the crossing where there are traffic lights.*
- 20 Så skal De til venstre over fodgængerovergangen *Then you must go left over the pedestrian crossing*
- 21 og derefter ad første gade til højre. *and after that down the first street to the right.*
- 22 Er der langt? *Is it far?*
 der can be used in place of the subject. When there is no obvious subject to the verb, it locates or indicates a situation:
 Der er mange mennesker i Tivoli. *There are many people in the Tivoli.*
 Der er længe til Sankt Hans. *It's a long time to Midsummer.*
 With verbal phrases like **komme gæster**, where the subject is part of an entity, **der** is inserted in place of the subject:
 Der kommer gæster. *Guests are coming.*
 Der bor mange mennesker i København. *Many people live in Copenhagen.*
- 23 Nej, det tager to-tre minutter. *No, it takes two or three minutes.*

Ved grænsen At the frontier

- 24 Jeg skal have benzin på. *I must put (lit. have) petrol in.*
- 25 Det kan jeg bruge mine sidste danske penge til. *I can spend my last Danish money on that.*
- a at bruge (jeg bruger, jeg brugte, jeg har brugt) mostly means use, but in connection with money also means spend.
- b penge money is plural, so få penge little money, mange penge much money, and pengene the money.
- 26 Ja, men skal vi køre meget længere i dag? *Yes, but are we going to drive much further today?*
- 27 Efter det lange ophold i Legoland, *After the long stay in Legoland,*
- 28 hvor det myldrede med børn, *which was swarming (lit. where it swarmed) with children,*
- 29 og Christiansfeld og Haderslev domkirke har vi næsten set nok. *and Christiansfeld and Haderslev Cathedral we've seen (lit. we've almost seen) enough (for today).*
- a Christiansfeld is a small town in south Jutland.
- b Haderslev is a cathedral town in North Schleswig.
- 30 Jeg synes, vi kan se lidt på Flensborg. *I think we can see a bit of Flensburg.*

Flensburg is a large town about five miles south of the border.

- 31 Derfra er der ikke så langt til Slesvig. *From there it isn't so far to Schleswig.*
 Slesvig is both the province (N14) and (as here) the town, which is about 26 miles south of Flensburg.
- 32 Hvis vi overnatter der, kan vi se Gottorp slot og Dannevirke i morgen formiddag. *If we spend the night there we can see Gottorp Castle and Dannevirke tomorrow morning.*
- a Gottorp slot Gottorp castle is a former castle which is now an interesting museum.
- b Dannevirke is a very long rampart just south of Schleswig. It has been of great importance in Danish history and has been used since 800, the last time being in 1864.
- 33 Jeg købte en tysk, en fransk og en hollandsk parlør i Fredericia. *I bought a German, a French and a Dutch phrasebook in Fredericia,*
- 34 Selvom far taler godt tysk og mor nydeligt fransk, vil jeg også se, hvordan jeg klarer mig på andre sprog end dansk og engelsk. *Even if Dad talks good German and Mum talks French well (lit. pretty French), I want to see how I get on with other languages than English and Danish.*
 at klare sig is to manage, get on; Jeg klarer mig ikke så godt på tysk. *I don't speak German too well.*
- 35 Jeg går lige ind og ringer til Lene. *I'll just go and ring Lene.*
- 36 Hils, og husk 01 (nul et) foran nummeret! *Remember us to her, and remember 01 before the number!*

I telefonen On the telephone

- 37 Hallo, det er Bjørn. Er det Else? *Hello, this is Bjørn speaking. Is that Else?*
- 38 Ja, det er mig. Hvordan har I det? *Yes, it is. (lit. Yes, it's me.) How are you all?*
- 39 Ja, et øjeblik. Hils dine forældre. *Yes, just a moment. Remember me to (lit. greet) your parents.*
- 40 Dav Lene. Hvordan går det? *Hello, Lene. How's it going?*
 Hvordan går det means how are you, how are you doing? You can also say Hvordan går det med dig, Dem, jer, which means the same as Hvordan har du/De/I det?
- 41 Og jeg længes allerede efter, at du kommer tilbage igen. *And I'm already looking forward to your coming back again.*
 efter, at du kommer tilbage igen In Danish a preposition often governs a subordinate clause:

Er I klar over, at vi har meget at ordne i dag? (L25 N7) *Do you realise we've got a lot to do today?*

Jeg ser på, at hun danser *I'm watching her dancing.*

- 42 Kan du have det godt så længe. *Have a nice time till then.*
This type of question is used as a mild imperative, implying a wish;
Kan du nu komme godt hjem? *Can you get home safely now?*
- 43 Tak—og så på gensyn snart. *Thanks, and see you again soon then.*

27 Lektion syvogtyve Europarejse

Lesson twenty-seven A European journey

What happens

The Jørgensens drive south to Dannevirke and are surprised how many people in South Schleswig speak Danish. Four days later they arrive in Paris, where they make plans to see the sights. Then they go on to Rome, where everything in the hotel is out of order because of a strike. They go out, and see many foreign tourists.

New words in this lesson

en afrikaner (-e) African	en franskmænd Frenchman
bagefter afterwards	(et) gadeliv street life
bange for afraid	(en) gas gas
en belgier (-e) Belgian	Hamborg Hamburg
behageligt pleasant	hernede down here
et besøg (-) visit	historisk historical
en boulevard (-er) boulevard	en hollænder (-e) Dutchman
Boulogneskoven the Bois de Boulogne	et håndklæde (-r) towel
briller spectacles	en japaner (-e) Japanese
burde ought to	en katolik (-ker) Catholic
en bøjle (-r) coat-hanger	en kunstudstilling art exhibition
bør ought to	en landsdel (-e) province
Eiffeltårnet the Eiffel Tower	lugter smells
en somebody	luk for close, shut, turn off
en fortovscafé (-er) open-air café	lærerigt informative
forvirret confused	en messe (-r) mass

en metro (-er) metro	Spanien Spain
et mindretal (-) minority	en stikkontakt wall plug, socket
morsomt interesting, funny	at stille om til switch to
en motorvej (-e) motor road	strejker strike
nok so	Sydamerika South America
nu now	Triumfbuen The Arc de Triomphe
en opera (-er) opera	en tysker (-e) German
en pariserinde (-r) Parisienne	tænde for switch on
en pave (-r) pope	uhyggeagtigt ghastly
Peterskirken St. Peter's	uorden disorder
en pilgrimsrejse (-r) pilgrimage	vel are they? is it?
en radio (-er) radio	virkede worked
et rejseselskab (-er) conducted party	Østrig Austria
Schweiz Switzerland	
at slukke for turn off	at lade blive stående leave
smart smart	Det kan lade sig gøre that's possible
solbriller sunglasses	i uorden out of order
som om as if	lad os hellere we'd better

Notes

Næste formiddag på Dannevirke *The next morning on Dannevirke*

- 1 Det var vel nok lærerigt for mig at besøge alle de historiske steder her i landsdelen *It was really informative for me to visit all the historical places in this province*
- 2 og morsomt at høre, hvor mange der kan tale dansk. *and funny to hear how many there can speak Danish.*
- a morsom means funny, amusing, interesting; also Det var morsomt at se Dem *I'm delighted to see you.*
- b der kan tale dansk who can speak Danish; Kan De tale dansk (engelsk, tysk)? *Can you speak Danish (English, German)?*
- 3 Det danske mindretal har jo også mange skoler hernede; *Of course the Danish minority has many schools down here;*
et mindretal or en minoritet a minority; et flertal or en majoritet a majority.
- 4 men nu må vi stille os om til tysk. *but now we must switch to (lit. switch ourselves into) German.*
- 5 Der er da også mange tyskere, der taler udmærket engelsk. *There are also many Germans who speak excellent English.*
- 6 Nu kører jeg til Hamborg. *Now I'm going to drive to Hamburg.*
- 7 Det går jo hurtigt videre nu, da der er motorvej det meste af vejen. *From now on it'll be quick (lit. It will go quickly further now), because there's a motorway most of the way.*
da can mean both when and as.

- 8 Jeg er helt forvirret efter at have gjort mit bedste *I'm utterly confused after doing my best*
 efter at have gjort *after doing* Note the construction using an infinitive after *efter*:
 Efter at have sat Henrik og Lise af på Kongens Nytorv kørte Bjørn og Lene videre til Glyptoteket. *After dropping (lit. setting down) Henrik and Lise at Kongens Nytorv Bjørn and Lene drove on to the Glyptotek.*
- 9 for at tale med tyskere, hollændere, belgiere og franskmænd de sidste dage. *to talk to Germans, Dutchmen, Belgians and Frenchmen in the last (few) days.*
- 10 Hvad med Eiffeltårnet og Triumfbuen? *What about the Eiffel Tower and the Arc de Triomphe?*
- 11 Lad os lade vognen blive stående og tage metroen. *Let's leave the car and take the Metro.*
 Lad os lade vognen blive stående *Let's leave the car (lit. Let's let the car remain standing).* at lade means both *to let* and *to leave*; lad mig blive siddende *let me sit here (remain sitting)*; lad mig være i fred *leave me in peace.*
- 12 Bagefter kan vi tage ud til Boulogneskoven og få en rigtig fransk frokost. *Afterwards we can go out to the Bois de Boulogne and have a real French lunch.*
- 13 Er der nogen, der har noget imod det? *Is anybody against that?*
 Note the construction with the two different uses of *der* (lit. *Is there anybody, who has (got) anything against that?*)
- 14 Nej, jeg synes, det lyder godt. *No, I think that sounds fine.*
- 15 I eftermiddag vil jeg på kunstudstilling. *This afternoon I want to go to an art exhibition.*
 jeg vil på kunstudstilling *I want to go to an art exhibition* Bjørn says på kunstudstilling (lit. *to art exhibition*), meaning that he would like to go to an exhibition, without knowing which one he will go to (L11 N1b).
- 16 Imens går jeg ud og ser på butikker . . . *In the meantime I'll go out and look at (the) shops . . .*
- 17 og jeg sætter mig på en fortovscafé på en af boulevarderne ved operaen og ser på gadelivet . . . *and I'll sit down at an open-air café on one of the boulevards near the Opera and watch what's going on in the street . . .*
- a en fortovscafé is en café på fortovet *a café on the pavement*; a pavement is et fortov. Café can also be spelt kafé.
- b gadelivet *what's going on in the street (lit. the street life).*

- 18 og pariserinderne. *and the Parisian girls.*
 The feminine ending *-inde* is not used much nowadays; it is still found in some words like *københavnnerinde* (*a woman from Copenhagen*) and *skuespillerinde* *actress.*
- 19 De er nu ikke smartere, end du er. *But they aren't any smarter than you are.*
smart is generally used to describe a woman who is elegant, although it is also used of businessmen:
 Han er en smart forretningsmand. *He's a smart businessman.*

I Rom. På hotellet *In Rome. At the hotel*

- 20 I Rom. *In Rome.*
 Most foreign place-names in Danish are the same as in their language of origin, although some, like **Rom**, have Danish forms. (**Roma** is the official word.)
- 21 Det var behageligt med den friske luft oppe i bjergene. *It was pleasant with the fresh air up in the mountains.*
 bjergene *the mountains* (from *et bjerg*) Many Danes, coming from a flat country, would call hills *bjerger*.
- 22 Ja, her lugter det, som om der var en, der havde glemt at slukke for gassen. *Yes, here it smells as if somebody had forgotten to turn off the gas.*
 der var en, der havde *somebody had* (lit. *there was somebody who had*)
- 23 Luk lige for vandet. Det løber. *Please turn off the water. It's running.*
- a lige See L26 N6.
- b at slukke or at lukke for is *to turn off* (light, radio, etc.):
 Jeg slukker lyset *I turn off the light*;
 Jeg slukker for gassen (or Jeg lukker for gassen) *I turn off the gas*;
 Jeg slukker radioen (or Jeg lukker for radioen) *I turn off the radio*;
 Jeg lukker for vandet *I turn off the water.*
 To turn on is at tænde (for) or at lukke op:
 Jeg tænder lyset *I light the candle, I switch on the light*;
 Jeg tænder (for) gassen *I turn on the gas*;
 Jeg lukker op for vandet *I turn on the water*;
 Jeg tænder (for) radioen or Jeg lukker op for radioen *I switch on the radio.*
- 24 Jeg ville tænde for radioen, men stikkontakten var i uorden, så radioen virkede ikke. *I wanted to switch on the radio, but the socket was out of order, so the radio didn't work.*
- 25 Du burde ringe til receptionen. *You ought to phone the reception.*
 at burde *ought* is another modal verb (L8 N15b):

- Vi bør besøge Benthe på hospitalet. *We ought to visit Benthe in hospital.*
- 26 Men sig også, at vi vil have et par bøjler og et håndklæde til. *But also say that we want a few coat hangers and one more towel.*
- 27 Jeg er bange for, at det ikke kan lade sig gøre. *I'm afraid that's not possible.*
- a for, at det ikke . . . Here is another example of a preposition governing a subordinate clause (L26 N41):
Er der nogen, der har noget imod, at jeg går på kunstudstilling? *Does anybody mind (lit. has anybody got anything against) my going to an art exhibition?*
- b det kan lade sig gøre *that's possible, that can be done (lit. that can let itself do);*
Kan det lade sig gøre? *Is it possible?*
- 28 De strejker da ikke endnu, vel? *They aren't still on strike, are they?*
vel is often put into vague questions, or statements which contain a sort of indirect question:
Du kommer vel i morgen? *You will come tomorrow, I hope.*
- 29 Jo, det tror jeg nok. *Yes, I think they are.*
- 30 Lad os hellere gå ud og købe de solbriller, du talte om. *We'd better go out and buy the sunglasses you were talking about.*
briller glasses and solbriller sunglasses are plural; a pair of glasses is et par briller:
Hvor meget koster de solbriller parret? *How much do these sunglasses cost per pair?*

På gaden i Rom *In the street in Rome*

- 31 Det er næsten uhyggeligt så mange turister, der er i Rom i øjeblikket. *It's quite awful how many tourists are in Rome at the moment.*
- 32 Jeg tror, en stor del er katolikker på pilgrimsrejse. *I think a lot of them are Catholics on pilgrimage.*
- 33 De er her for at se paven og Peterskirken. *They're here to see the Pope and St Peter's.*
- 34 Jeg har set rejseselskaber fra Østrig, Schweiz, Spanien, Portugal og Sydamerika, og en hel del afrikanere og japanere, der skulle til en af de store messer. *I've seen parties from Austria, Switzerland, Spain, Portugal, and South America, and quite a lot of Africans and Japanese who were going to one of the big masses.*
- 35 Tænk, i overmorgen skal vi hjem! *(Just) think, the day after tomorrow we're going home!*

Lektion otteogtyve To breve

Lesson twenty-eight Two letters

What happens

Before they leave Rome, Lise and Henrik write to the Jensens thanking them again for their hospitality, and telling them about Italy. At the same time Bjørn writes to Lene, telling of his plans for the next few days. He is looking forward to seeing her again in Copenhagen.

New words in this lesson

afleveret	handed over	omtalte	mentioned
ankom	arrived	en onkel (-kler)	uncle
en bror (brødre)	brother	otteogtyve	twenty-eight
da	as	et postkort (-)	postcard
derop	up there	en recept (-er)	prescription
engang	once	sendt	sent
en fejltagelse (-r)	mistake	en sko (-)	shoe
et firma (-er)	firm	en søndag (-e)	Sunday
fundet ud af	found out	en tante (-r)	aunt
et fornøjelse (-r)	amusement	traf	met
fås	be had	turde	dared
helst	rather	Vatikanet	the Vatican
herned	down here	åben	open
en hjemrejse (-r)	journey home	åbne	open
hvis	whose		
en kirke (-r)	church	at få chance for	get the chance to
klart	ready	at få fat i	get hold of
en kvinde (-r)	woman	at køre bil	drive a car
kære	dear	De kærligste hilsner	with very much love
kærlig	affectionate		
lader	let	den ene og den anden	one and all
et lommetørklæde (-r)	handkerchief	endnu	once again
en medicin	medicine	i det mindste	at least
mænd	men	kærlig hilsen	much love
nordpå	northwards	om søndagen	on Sundays
Norge	Norway	ved en fejltagelse	by mistake
om	whether		

Et takkebreve A letter of thanks

- 1 **Rom, søndag den 1. (første) august.** *Rome, Sunday August 1st.*
This is how the date would be written (followed by the year, if necessary) in an informal letter; the day of the week is only written in personal letters. Usually the date is written **den 1. august 1976**. In business letters it would be **1.8.1976**.
- 2 **Kære Else, Lene og Svend.** *Dear Else, Lene and Svend.*
- 3 **Tak for jeres brev, som lå her, da vi ankom i forgårs.** *Thank you for your letter which was (lying) here when we arrived the day before yesterday.*
at ankomme is a regular verb: **jeg ankommer, jeg ankom, jeg er ankommet.**
- 4 **Nu har vi alt klart til hjemrejsen i aften.** *Now we've got everything ready for the journey home tonight.*
- 5 **Vi har skrevet til både den ene og den anden i familien** *We've written to all the family*
a **den ene og den anden** means *all, one and all*.
b **familie** in Danish means both *family* and *relatives*.
- 6 **(bror, søster, onkel, tante osv.),** *(brother, sister, uncle, aunt, etc.),*
en bror a brother (formerly **en broder**) is an irregular word:
en bror, broderen, brødre, brødrene.
- 7 **men vi vil helst skrive til jer** *but we prefer to write to you*
- 8 **og takke endnu engang for jeres enestående gæstfrihed.** *and thank (you) once again for your excellent hospitality.*
- 9 **Den var næsten lige så god som vores egen.** *It was almost as good as our own.*
- 10 **Da firmaet skal have en bil til København på fredag, og de lader studenter køre deres biler, har Bjørn fået chancen for at køre den derop,** *As the firm must send a car to Copenhagen next Friday, and they let students drive their cars, Bjørn's got the chance of driving it up there,*
11 **fordi der ikke er nogen andre, der har tid nu.** *because nobody else has (got) time now.*
a **fordi because** This phrase could also read **da der ikke er nogen andre.**
b **fordi der ikke er nogen andre because there isn't anybody else** (lit. *there are not any others*)
- 12 **Vi har købt to par sko hver, da de er billigere henede.** *We've bought two pairs of shoes each, as they are cheaper down here.*
a **sko shoe** is the same in singular and plural.
b **hver** Remember that it means both *every* and *each* (L10 N23).
- 13 **Mange butikker er også åbne om søndagen.** *Many shops are also open on Sundays.*

åben, åbent, åbne open; to open is **at åbne** (jeg åbner, jeg åbnede, jeg har åbnet).

- 14 **Vi har også fået fat i den medicin, I omtalte.** *We've also got hold of the medicine you mentioned.*
- 15 **Den fås uden recept her.** *You can get it without a prescription here.*
a **Den fås** *You can get it* (lit. *It is got*); **fås** is the passive form of **at få to get**.
b **en recept** (plural **recepter**) is a *prescription*; do not confuse it with a *recipe* which is **en opskrift** (L5 N13).
- 16 **Der er mange i kirke i dag, men som altid flere kvinder end mænd.** *There are many people at church today, but as always more women than men.*
a **en kvinde** (plural **kvinder**) *woman*; children and young people would use **dame** (*lady*) instead of **kvinde**.
b **mænd** is the plural of **mand**.
- 17 **Vi håber, at I har fået de seks postkort, vi har sendt på vejen herved,** *We hope you got the six postcards we sent on our way down here,*
- 18 **og takker endnu engang for sidst.** *and thank you once again.*
(**Vi takker for sidst** or **tak for sidst** (L23 N1) is an expression which cannot easily be translated into English. It literally means *thank you for the last time* and is what you say to people the next time you see them after receiving their hospitality.
- 19 **Kærlig hilsen, Lise og Henrik.** *With love, Lise and Henrik.*
hilsen greeting or **hilsner greetings** are always used to end letters. A business letter would end **med hilsen**, and personal letters **venlig hilsen** or **(de) venligste hilsner** or, if it is more friendly and intimate, **kærlig hilsen** or **(de) kærligste hilsner**.

På gensyn! *See you soon!*

- 20 **Rom, 1.8. (første i ottende).** *Rome, August 1st.*
- 21 **Det er rart at høre, at både du og dine forældre har det godt og har oplevet meget i jeres ferie.** *I'm glad to hear that both you and your parents are well and had so many pleasant experiences on your holiday.*
at opleve is *to experience*, usually something enjoyable.
- 22 **Rigtig god fornøjelse på turen til Norge, som du snakkede om.** *Enjoy yourself on the trip to Norway you talked about.*
(**Rigtig**) **god fornøjelse** means *Have a good time, enjoy yourself*.
- 23 **Jeg når måske til København før dig.** *I might get to Copenhagen before you* (lit. *I reach perhaps Copenhagen before you*).
- 24 **Det bliver sikkert onsdag i næste uge,** *That'll probably be (on) Wednesday next week,*

- 25 **da jeg selv må bestemme, om turen skal vare fire eller fem dage.** *because I (myself) may decide whether the trip will take (lit. last) four or five days.*
- 26 **Mor har ved en fejltagelse fået et par lommetørklæder for meget med.** *Mum's brought a couple of (extra) handkerchiefs (lit. handkerchiefs too many) with her by mistake.*
- a **ved en fejltagelse** *by mistake* Note the use of **en** in the Danish expression.
- b **lommetørklæder** *handkerchiefs* from **lomme** *pocket* and **tørklæde** *scarf, kerchief*.
- 27 **Hun ved ikke, hvis de er.** *She doesn't know whose they are.*
- 28 **Det må være dine eller Elses.** *They must be yours or Else's.*
- 29 **Dem tager jeg med hjem.** *I'll bring them home with me.*
- 30 **Jeg har taget en masse billeder, og jeg glæder mig til, at du skal se dem.** *I've taken a lot of photos, and I'm looking forward to your seeing them.*
- a **et billede** (L10) can mean all sorts of pictures; but **at tage billeder** is always *to take photos*.
- b **til, at du skal se dem** *to your seeing them* (lit. *to that you shall see them*) This is another example of a preposition governing a subordinate clause (L26 N41); note the construction used with **at glæde sig til**.
- 31 **Jeg tager Jesper, en dansk student, jeg traf i Vatikanet, med nordpå.** *I'm taking Jesper, a Danish student I met in the Vatican, north with me.* **jeg traf** *I met* from **at træffe** *to meet*; it means the same as **at møde**.
- 32 **Han tør ikke køre bil i Italien, eller i det mindste sagde han, at han ikke turde.** *He doesn't dare to drive a car in Italy, or at least he said he didn't.*
tør dare is from another modal verb **at turde**, similar to **at burde** *ought to*; **jeg tør** *I dare*; **jeg turde** *I dared*; **jeg har turdet** *I have dared*.
- 33 **Hils din mor og far mange gange.** *Remember me to your mother and father (lit. greet your mother and father many times).*
- 34 **De kærligste hilsener Din Bjørn.** *With very much love, (your) Bjørn.* This is a much more affectionate way of ending a letter than **Kærlig hilsen** (N19).

Glossary of grammatical terms

ADJECTIVE is a word which describes or qualifies a noun: **stor** *big*, **almindelig** *usual*, **rød** *red*. Adjectives in Danish have different forms according to the nouns and articles with which they are used: **en stor bil** *a large car*, **den store bil** *the large car*, **(de) store biler** *(the) large cars*; **et stort bord** *a large table*, **det store bord** *the large table*, **(de) store borde** *(the) large tables*. (See **Adjectives** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

ADVERB is a word which describes a verb, adjective, or another adverb. Most adverbs in English end in *-ly*; in Danish they usually end in *-t*: **hurtigt** *quickly*; **almindeligt** *usually*, **næsten** *almost*, **der** *there*. (See **Adverbs** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

ARTICLE There are two kinds of article: the indefinite article (*a* or *an*) and the definite article (*the*). In Danish the definite and indefinite articles are the same (**en/et**), but they are used differently: before the noun they mean *a(n)*, but when joined on to it they mean *the*: **en pige** *a girl*, **pigen** *the girl*; **et køkken** *a kitchen*, **køkkenet** *the kitchen*. The plural of the definite article is **-ne**: **pigerne** *the girls*, **køkkenerne** *the kitchens*. (See **Articles** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

AUXILIARY VERB helps another verb to form, for example, a past tense, without changing the basic meaning of the main verb: **de er kommet** *they have arrived*. The auxiliary verbs in Danish are **at være** and **at have** (used to form the perfect), and **at blive** (used to form the passive).

CLAUSE is part of a sentence containing its own subject, verb, and sometimes object. A sentence can consist of several clauses. The part of the sentence which expresses the main idea is called the main clause; in *I'm going to the post office because I need some stamps*, the main clause is *I'm going to the post office*. The other clause, *because I need some stamps*, is called a subordinate clause. A subordinate clause may be introduced by words such as *when, if, because, that*. If it is introduced by a relative pronoun (*who, which, that*), it is called a relative clause; a relative clause gives more information about a person or thing in the main clause: *The man that you saw yesterday is my uncle*.

COMMON is one of the genders in Danish. All Danish nouns have a gender, either common or neuter, and any articles or adjectives used with them must have the same gender.

COMPARATIVE is the form of the adjective used for comparing two things.

In English the comparative is usually formed by adding *-er* to the adjective, or using *more* before it; in Danish the adjective has **-ere** added to it, or is preceded by **mere**: **lettere** *easier*, **mere interessant** *more interesting*. (See **Adjectives**, 2 in the Grammatical Appendix.)

COMPLEMENT is a noun or adjective following the verb *to be* and certain other verbs: **Han er sølvsmed** *He is a silversmith*.

DEFINITE is the form of the noun or adjective used with the definite article:

tørklædet *the scarf*, **det smukke tørklæde** *the beautiful scarf*.

DEMONSTRATIVE is a word which points to something: *this*, *that*. (See

Adjectives, 4 and **Pronouns, 4** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

GENDER All Danish nouns fall into two genders or classes: common or neuter. The form of any article or adjective used with a singular noun depends on the gender of the noun. The plural of adjectives, nouns and articles is the same for both genders.

INDEFINITE is the form of the noun or adjective used with the indefinite article: **et smukt tørklæde** *a beautiful scarf*.

INFINITIVE is the part of the verb which is preceded by *to* in English; in Danish it is preceded by **at**: **at lave** *to make*.

INTERROGATIVE means question-form; it can be shown by pronouns (**hvem?** *who?* **hvilken?** *which?*), adverbs (**hvor?** *where?* **hvorfor?** *why?*) or verbs (**kommer han?** *is he coming?* **skal vi gå?** *shall we go?*)

MAIN CLAUSE is a plain sentence (consisting of subject, verb, and sometimes object) which expresses the main idea of a sentence. (See Subordinate Clause.)

MODAL VERB is a verb used with another verb to add a new meaning to it:

Han kan komme *he can come*; **jeg må betale** *I must pay*. Modal verbs are always used with infinitives; note that they are not the same as auxiliary verbs, which are used in forming tenses without changing the meaning of the main verb. (See **Modal Verbs** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

NEUTER is one of the genders in Danish. All Danish nouns are either common or neuter gender, and any articles or adjectives used with them must have the same gender.

NOUN is the name of a place, person; thing, quality, etc.: *Copenhagen*, *Svend*, *ticket*, *goodness*. (See **Nouns** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

OBJECT is a thing or person affected by a verb, and can be a noun or pronoun. For example, in *They sank the ship*, *They* is the subject, *sank* is the verb and *the ship* is the object. A verb does not always take an object; for example, *The ship sank slowly* (*slowly* is an adverb and not an object); or it may have two objects: *He gave me the book* (*the book* tells you what he gave, whilst *me* tells you to whom he gave it).

PASSIVE is the form of a verb which indicates that something is done to the subject, rather than by it: *the car was sold*, *beer is drunk* (instead of *Svend sold the car*, *he drinks beer*). Note that a passive verb never has an object. See **Verbs, 8** in the Grammatical Appendix.

PAST is the form of a verb used to describe the past. (See **Verbs, 4** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

PAST PARTICIPLE is part of a verb, e.g. *written*, *spoken*, *gone*, *lived*. It can be used to construct the perfect (*he has spoken*) as well as an adjective (*the spoken language*). In English the past participle is often the same as the past, but this is not the case in Danish: **jeg har boet** *I have lived* but **jeg boede** *I lived*.

PERFECT is the tense which is formed with *to have* (**at have** or **at være** in Danish) and past participle: *we have spoken*, *they have arrived*. (See **Verbs, 6** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

PLURAL is the form of a word indicating more than one: *men*, *tables*.

Nouns, adjectives and articles in Danish all have plural forms.

POSSESSIVES are words which indicate possession: *my*, *mine*, *John's*. (See **Nouns, 3** and **Adjectives, 3** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

PREPOSITION is a little word which describes the relationship of things to each other: **in** *ten minutes*, **on** *the table*, *the plane from New York*.

PRESENT is the form of a verb used to describe the present: **han går** *he goes*, *he is going*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE is part of a verb which in English ends in *-ing*: *running*, *speaking*. In Danish it ends in **-ende**: **løbende**, **talende**, and is used only as an adjective.

PRONOUN is a word used to replace a noun: **han** *he*, **hvilken** *which*, **min** *mine*, **disse** *these*. (See **Pronouns** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

REFLEXIVE VERBS are verbs used with the reflexive pronouns (**mig myself**, **dig yourself**, etc.) when the subject and object (i.e. reflexive pronoun) refer to the same thing: **Jeg vasker mig** *I wash myself*.

RELATIVE CLAUSE is a minor clause in a sentence which usually refers to the subject or object, and is usually introduced by a relative pronoun: **Svend, som bor i København, er grosserer**. *Svend, who lives in Copenhagen, is a wholesaler*.

RELATIVE PRONOUN is a pronoun used to introduce a relative clause. (See **Pronouns, 5** and **7** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

SINGULAR is the form which indicates that only one person or thing is referred to: **en mand** *a man*; **et bord** *a table*. The opposite is plural. Nouns, adjectives and articles in Danish all have plural forms.

STRONG VERB is a verb which has a change of vowel in the past tenses: **drikker**, **drak**, **drukket** *drink, drank, drunk*.

SUBJECT is the word or phrase which tells you who or what does, is, etc.: *The house is white*. *The Jørgensens are travelling to Denmark*. In English the subject usually starts the sentence, but this is not always the case in Danish.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSE is a minor clause which is added to the main clause of a sentence. It contains a subject, verb, and sometimes an object: **Han sagde, at han havde moret sig**. *He said he had enjoyed himself*.

SUPERLATIVE is a form of the adjective used for making comparisons of three or more things: *highest, best, most interesting*. (See **Adjectives**, 2 in the Grammatical Appendix.)

TENSE is the time of a verb: present, past, or future.

TRANSITIVE VERBS are verbs which take an object: *He wrote a letter*. Some verbs can be used both transitively (*He grows roses*) and intransitively (*Roses grow well here*).

VERB is a word which describes an action or state: *go, have, sit, be*. (See **Verbs** in the Grammatical Appendix.)

WEAK VERB is a verb which takes a different ending in the past tenses: **venter, ventede, ventet** wait, waited, waited. (See Strong Verb).

Contents of Grammatical Appendix

1	Articles	149
2	Nouns	150
3	Adjectives	151
4	Pronouns	152
5	Adverbs	153
6	Verbs	154
7	Modal verbs	155
8	Irregular and strong verbs	156
9	Numerals	157
10	Dates and times	158
11	Prepositions	159
12	Word order	160
13	Punctuation	161

Grammatical Appendix

SUPERLATIVE is a form of the adjective used for making comparisons of three or more things: *highest, best, most interesting*. (See Adjectives, 2 in the Grammatical Appendix.)

TENSE is the time of a verb: present, past, or future.

TRANSITIVE VERBS are verbs which take an object: *He wrote a letter*. Some verbs can be used both transitively and intransitively: *Plants grow well here*.

VERB is a word which describes an action or state: *go, have, sit, be*. (See Verbs in the Grammatical Appendix.)

WEAK VERB is a verb which takes a different ending in the past tense: *visit, visited, visited you, visited, visited*. (See Strong Verb.)

Contents of Grammatical Appendix

		page
1	Articles	155
2	Nouns	156
3	Adjectives	157
4	Pronouns	159
5	Adverbs	161
6	Verbs	162
7	Modal verbs	164
8	Irregular and strong verbs	164
9	Numerals	166
10	Dates and times	166
11	Prepositions	168
12	Word order	168
13	Punctuation	169

2 When the noun is preceded by an adjective, however, a different definite article (*den, det, or det*) is used before the adjective:

*den danske mand, the Danish man, det danske hus, the Danish house;
de danske mænd, the Danish men, de danske kvinder, the Danish women*

3 This form of the article is also used to qualify nouns before a relative clause:

Hvem er det der kommer, vi har vist plejet på? When did the ferry we've been on leave?

Lad os gå ind og købe en avis, de venter her. Let's go in and buy the newspaper, you were waiting here.

Note

1 Danish usage differs from the English:

a. in omitting the article when it is used in English, especially

a. before the complement in set verbal expressions:

at være borte, to drive a car

b. in highlighting it to give an opportunity to

at have et øjeblik for lov, to have a sense of humour

at holde fest, to hold a party

c. when naming a person's nationality, profession, capacity, etc.:

Hvem er god den flamske, hvem er god, at den flamske

dog er adskilt, I'm a silvermouth

d. in some expressions of time and place:

at rejse på vej, on the way

at rejse på den rigtige

i eftermiddag, in the afternoon

Articles

- 1 There are two genders in Danish—common and neuter—and the articles must be the same gender as the nouns they qualify—**en** and **et** respectively. When placed before the noun, the article means *a(n)*; when added on to it, it means *the*. (These are respectively known as the indefinite and definite forms):

singular	indefinite	definite
common neuter	en mand <i>a man</i> et hus <i>a house</i>	manden <i>the man</i> huset <i>the house</i>

In the plural the definite ending for nouns of both genders is **-(e)ne**:

plural	indefinite	definite
common neuter	mænd <i>men</i> huse <i>houses</i>	mændene <i>the men</i> husene <i>the houses</i>

- 2 When the noun is preceded by an adjective, however, a different definite article (**den**, **det**, or **de**) is used before the adjective:
den danske mand *the Danish man*; **det danske hus** *the Danish house*;
de danske mænd *the Danish men*; **de danske huse** *the Danish houses*.
- 3 This form of the article is also used to qualify nouns before a relative clause:
Hvornår går den færge, vi har fået plads på? *When does the ferry we've booked on leave?*
Lad os gå ud og købe de solbriller, du talte om. *Let's go out and buy the sunglasses you were talking about.*

Note

Danish usage differs from the English

- i in omitting the article where it is used in English, especially
 - a before the complement in set verbal expressions:
 - at køre bil** to drive *a* car
 - at få lejlighed til** to get *an* opportunity to
 - at have sans for humor** to have *a* sense of humour
 - at holde fest** to hold *a* party
 - b when naming a person's nationality, profession, capacity, etc.:
 - Bjørn er gæst hos Hansens.** Bjørn's a guest *at the* Hansens'.
 - Jeg er sølvsmed.** I'm *a* silversmith.
 - c in some expressions of time and place:
 - på vej** on *the* way
 - til højre** on *the* right
 - i eftermiddag** in *the* afternoon.

- ii in using the definite article where it is not used in English:

a in set expressions such as

i *byen* in town

på *hospitalet* in hospital

Kaffen er serveret. *Coffee's served.*

to gange om *ugen* twice a week

b where the possessive adjective would be used in English, but in fact the meaning is obvious from the context:

Det har jeg her i *lommen*. *I've got it here in my (lit. the) pocket.*

Nouns

- 1 All Danish nouns have a **gender**, common or neuter (see Articles), and should be learnt with their article, **en** or **et**, as there is no easy way of telling the gender of a word. **En mand** a man is common gender, for example, while **et barn** a child is neuter.

- 2 The **plural** of nouns, like their gender, is something that has to be learnt by heart. There are three main ways of forming the plural in Danish: (a) with the ending **-e**; (b) with the ending **-(e)r**; and (c) with no ending. Words in all these categories may take a vowel change in the plural. (A few foreign words, mainly English, keep their foreign plurals.) The following will give some indication of how the plurals are formed, although they are for guidance only, and should not be considered as hard-and-fast rules:

- a Words ending in an unstressed syllable:

- i Those ending in **-e** take **-r** in the plural:

en plade to **plader**

en bonde to **bønder**

- ii Words ending in **-er** usually take **-e** in the plural:

en tolder to **toldere**

- iii Most other words in this category take **-er**:

en tallerken to **tallerkener**

en gaffel to **gaffer**

- b Words consisting of or ending in a stressed syllable:

- i Words ending in a vowel usually take **-er** in the plural:

et maleri to **malerier**

en by to **byer**

(Exceptions are **sko** and **knæ**, which are the same in the plural.)

- ii Most neuter monosyllabic words take no ending in the plural:

et glas to **glas**

There are, however, many exceptions to this rule, most of which take **-e**.

- 3a The **possessive**, or **genitive**, is formed by adding an **-s** (but no apostrophe) to the noun:

en mands hat a man's hat; **mandens hat** the man's hat; **mænds hatte** men's hats;

mændenes hatte the men's hats; **den unge mands bog** the young man's book;

Hr. Jensens bil Mr Jensen's car.

- b It is used more extensively in Danish than in English:

Kaffens smag the taste of coffee (lit. *coffee's taste*); **Jeg kan ikke lide blusens farve**. *I don't like the colour of the blouse* (lit. *the blouse's colour*).

Adjectives

1 Agreement

Adjectives, like articles, must have the same number and gender as the nouns to which they refer.

- a In the neuter singular **-t** is added to the basic form:

en gul bil a yellow car; **et gult hus** a yellow house.

- b The plural (of both genders) is with an **-e**:

en gul bil a yellow car; **gule biler** yellow cars; **et gult hus** a yellow house; **gule huse** yellow houses.

- c After the definite article, possessive adjectives or nouns in the genitive, the adjective always ends in **-e**:

et gult hus but **det gule hus**, **mit gule hus**, **Elses gule hus**.

Note:

- i Adjectives ending in **-sk**, **-t** and unstressed **-e** do not take the neuter endings:

et engelsk hus an English house; **de engelske biler** the English cars; **et lille hus** a little house; **en lille bil** a small car; **små biler** small cars (*lille* has the irregular plural **små**).

- ii Some adjectives ending in a vowel do not take the plural and definite ending **-e**:

en lille bil a small car; **et lille hus** a little house; but **en grå bil** a grey car, **et gråt hus** a grey house, **grå huse** grey houses, **mit grå hus** my grey house.

- iii The ending **-et** changes to **-ede** in the definite and plural:

en hjemmelavet leverpostej a home-made liver pâté; but **den hjemmelavede leverpostej** the home-made liver pâté.

2 Comparison

- a The comparative and superlative of most adjectives are formed by adding **-(e)re** and **-(e)st**:

høj high **højere** higher **højest** highest;

smuk beautiful **smukkere** more beautiful **smukkest** most beautiful;

tidlig early **tidligere** earlier **tidligst** earliest.

- b Some adjectives are compared with **mere** more and **mest** most. The main types of adjectives compared this way are:

- i Some adjectives ending in **-isk**, **-en** and **-e**:

praktisk practical **mere praktisk** more practical **mest praktisk** most practical;

sulten hungry **mere sulten** hungrier **mest sulten** hungriest.

- ii Present and past participles:

henrivende mere **henrivende** mest **henrivende**.

Note: This classification is not absolute, and many adjectives can be compared both ways, depending on the preference of the speaker (L13 N3).

It is equally correct to say
interessant interessantere interessantest and interessant mere interessant mest interessant.

- c Some adjectives have irregular comparisons:

stor	large	større	størst
ung	young	ynge	yngst
lang	long	længere	længst
gammel	old	ældre	ældst
god	good	bedre	bedst
lille	small	mindre	mindst
slem	bad	værre	værst
mange	many	flere	flest
meget	much	mere	mest

- d The comparative is followed by **end than**:

Bjørn er højere end Lene. *Bjørn's taller than Lene.*

Note

Danish usage differs from the English in two ways:

- i **Han er ældre end mig** *He's older than I (am)* (lit. *He's older than me*).
- ii **Hvem er den højeste, Bjørn eller Lene?** *Who's (the) taller* (lit. *the tallest*), *Bjørn or Lene?*
- e **Aller-** can be added to a superlative for emphasis:
Boserup Skov er allerdejlignst på denne tid af året. *Boserup Wood is at its very best at this time of year.*
- f **As . . . as is lige så . . . som:**
Lene er lige så høj som sin mor. *Lene is (just) as tall as her mother.*

- 3 The possessive adjectives

min, mit, mine *my*
din, dit, dine *your* (familiar)
hans *his*
hendes *her* } (i.e. belonging to another person)
sin, sit, sine *his, her* (own)
dens, dets *its*
vores *our*
jeres *your* (plural, familiar)
Deres *your* (polite)
deres *their*
Notes

- i **Min (mit, mine), din (dit, dine) and sin (sit, sine)** have to agree with the nouns they qualify:
Jeg må lige have min taske med og mine nøgler og mit brilleetui. *I must just have my handbag, keys, and spectacle case with me.*
The other possessives are invariable:
De må lige have Deres taske med, og Deres nøgler, og Deres brilleetui.
- ii The difference between **sin (sit, sine)** and **hans/hendes** is that the first refers to someone's own thing, whereas **hans/hendes** refers to somebody else's (see L1 N32b):
Han talte med sin kone *He was speaking to his (i.e. his own) wife;*
Han talte med hans kone *He was speaking to his (i.e. somebody else's) wife.*

- 4 The demonstrative adjectives are

denne	dette	disse	this, these
den	det	de	that, those

These are somewhat formal, and are often replaced in conversation by

den her	det her	de her	this, these
den der	det der	de der	that, those

- 5 Adverbs are formed by adding **-t** (corresponding to **-ly** in English) to the adjective:

Hun er smuk. *She is beautiful.*

Hun synger smukt. *She sings beautifully.*

Pronouns

- 1 The personal pronouns are

Subject	Object	Reflexive
jeg <i>I</i>	mig <i>me</i>	mig <i>myself</i>
du <i>you</i>	dig <i>you</i>	dig <i>yourself</i> (informal)
han <i>he</i>	ham <i>him</i>	sig <i>himself</i>
hun <i>she</i>	hende <i>her</i>	sig <i>herself</i>
den, det <i>it</i>	den, det <i>it</i>	sig <i>itself</i>
vi <i>we</i>	os <i>us</i>	os <i>ourselves</i>
I <i>you</i>	jer <i>you</i>	jer <i>yourselves</i> (plural, informal)
De <i>you</i>	Dem <i>you</i>	Dem <i>yourself</i> (formal)
de <i>they</i>	dem <i>them</i>	sig <i>themselves</i>

Rejser du sammen med din kone? *Are you travelling with your wife?*

Rejser din kone med dig? *Is your wife travelling with you?*

Jeg ser dig. *I (can) see you.*

Har du vasket dig? *Have you washed yourself?*

- 2 There is another personal pronoun, **man**, which means *one, you, they, people* (L6 N31):

I dag ser man mange højhuse. *Nowadays you see many tall buildings.*

I England drikker man kaffe med fløde. *In England people drink white coffee.*

Man siger, det skal regne i morgen. *They say it'll rain tomorrow.*

- 3 The possessive pronouns are the same as the possessive adjectives (See Adjectives, 3):

Det er min bog. *It is my book.*

Bogen er min. *The book is mine.*

- 4 The demonstrative pronouns are the same as the demonstrative adjectives (See Adjectives, 4):

Jeg kan bedre lide denne (her) end den vi fik i går. *I like this one better than the one we got yesterday.*

- 5 The relative pronouns **som** and **der** correspond to *who/whom, that, which*; but whereas **som** can be used of both the subject and object of the clause it introduces, **der** can only be used of the subject:

Manden, som jeg talte med, er dansker. *The man who(m) I was talking to is Danish.* (Som is the object of the subordinate clause **som jeg talte med**.)

Manden, ^{som}der talte med mig, er dansker. *The man who was talking to me is Danish.* (Som/der is the subject of the subordinate clause.)

- 6 The indefinite pronouns are

hver, hvert *each, every*; **nogen** *some(body), any(body)*; **noget** *some(thing), any(thing)*; **nogle** *some*; **ingen, intet** *no, none*.

Bjørn og Lene drikker hver en snaps til maden. *Bjørn and Lene each have a schnapps with their meal.*

Har du noget kaffe? Ja, jeg har noget. *Have you got any coffee? Yes, I've got some.*

Er her nogen? Nej, her er ikke nogen. *Is (there) anybody here? No, there isn't anybody here.*

Notes

- i With uncountable nouns (**kaffe** *coffee*, **sol** *silver*, **vand** *water*) **noget** is used, regardless of gender; it is **suppen** *the soup* but **noget suppe** *some soup*.
ii In questions and negative sentences, **nogen** is used instead of **nogle** in the plural:
De har nogle ledige værelser på tredje sal. but
Har De nogen ledige værelser?
Der var nogle billige porrer på torvet. but
Der var ikke nogen porrer på torvet.

- 7 The interrogative pronouns are

hvem *who(m)*; **hvad** *what*; **hvis** *whose*;

hvilken, hvilket, hvilke *which*;

hvor *where*;

hvordan *how*; **hvornår** *when*; **hvorfor** *why*.

Hvor får man dem? *Where do you get them?*

Hvad synes du om vores gæster? *What do you think of our guests?*

The interrogative pronouns can also be used as relatives:

Kan De fortælle mig, hvad et brev til Amerika koster? *Can you tell me what a letter to America costs?*

Jeg må ud og se, hvem det er. *I must go out and see who it is.*

Hun ved ikke, hvis de er. *She doesn't know whose they are.*

Adverbs

- 1 Adverbs are usually formed by adding **-t** (corresponding to *-ly* in English) to the adjective:

Hun er smuk. *She is beautiful*; **Hun synger smukt.** *She sings beautifully.*

- 2 Adjectives ending in **-ig** do not take the adverbial ending **-t** when used as adverbs of degree, i.e. to quantify adjectives following them:

Hun var ualmindelig yndigt klædt. *She was unusually beautifully dressed*; but

Hun var ualmindeligt klædt. *She was unusually dressed.*

- 3 Many commonly-used adverbs have no adjectival equivalent, such as **særdeles** *extremely*, **ikke** *not*, **næsten** *almost*, **vel** *well*, **aldrig** *never*, **altid** *always*, etc.

- 4 There is a group of unstressed adverbs—**vel, jo, da, mon, nu, nok**—which are often put into a sentence for emphasis or balance, without necessarily adding very much to the meaning. It is not always necessary to translate them:

Der er de jo! *There they are!*

- 5 The following adverbs have two forms, one ending in **-e** and the other not, which respectively indicate position or motion (L7 N3b):

ud	ude	<i>out</i>
ind	inde	<i>in</i>
ned	nede	<i>down</i>
op	oppe	<i>up</i>
over	ovre	<i>over</i>
hen	henne	<i>away (from here), towards, along</i>
om	omme	<i>round, about</i>
frem	fremme	<i>forward</i>
bort	borte	<i>away, off</i>
hjem	hjemme	<i>home</i>

Bjørn sidder ovre ved bordet. *Bjørn's sitting over there at the table.*

Bjørn går over til bordet. *Bjørn's going over to the table.*

- 6 The adverb is placed after the finite verb in main clauses, and before the finite verb in subordinate clauses:

Han ser aldrig TV. *He never watches TV.*
han har aldrig set TV. *has never watched TV.*

Jeg har hørt, at han aldrig ser TV. *I've heard he never watches TV.*
aldrig har set TV. *has never watched TV.*

If the main clause starts with something other than the subject, the subject and verb are reversed, and so the subject comes between the verb and adverb:

Om lørdagen ser han aldrig TV. *He never watches TV on Saturdays.*

Verbs

- 1 Danish verbs have only one form for each tense:
jeg er I am, du er you are, han er he is
jeg bor I live, han bor he lives.
- 2 The infinitive always has **at** (like *to* in English):
at være to be; at bo to live; at skrive to write.
- 3 The present is formed by adding **-r** to the infinitive:
at bo to live; jeg bor I live.
There is only one present tense in Danish; **jeg bor** means both *I live* and *I am living*.
- 4 The present participle is formed with the ending **-ende**: **kørende driving, talende speaking**. In Danish the present participle is used only as an adjective (**det øsende regnvejr the pouring rain**), never as part of a verb-form such as in the English *it is pouring*.
- 5 The past tense of weak verbs ends in **-te** or (usually) **-ede**:
jeg boede I lived; jeg kørte I drove.
Again one form of the verb in Danish corresponds to two in English; **jeg boede** means *I lived* and *I was living*.
For the past tenses of strong and irregular verbs, see the list of verbs on page 164.
- 6 The past participle of all verbs ends in **-(e)t**:
boet lived; kørt driven; set seen; spist eaten.
- 7 The perfect tense is formed, as in English, with **har** (*has, have*) and the past participle:
jeg har boet I have lived; han har spist he has eaten.
The perfect of some verbs—mostly verbs of motion—is formed with **er**, not **har**:
jeg er kommet I have come; han er kørt he has driven.
Note that some verbs can be conjugated with both **har** and **er**, according to whether they are used transitively (with **har**) or intransitively (with **er**):
Han er kommet hjem He's come home.
Han har kommet sukker i kaffen. He's got sugar in his coffee.
- 8 There is no future tense in Danish. The future is expressed either by the present,
Jeg rejser i morgen I'm going (lit. travelling) tomorrow,

or by the use of **vil** or **skal** and an infinitive:

Han skal rejse i morgen. He's going tomorrow.

Han vil rejse i morgen, hvis jeg beder ham om det. He'll go tomorrow if I ask him to.

- 9 There are two ways of constructing the passive: (i) by adding **-s** to the infinitive (for the infinitive and present passive) or the past (for the past passive); (ii) by using the past participle and **at blive**. (The passive of the perfect can only be formed by **at blive** and the past participle):
at vaske to wash; at vaskes or at blive vasket to be washed;
Bilen vaskes } The car is being washed
Bilen bliver vasket }
Bilen vaskedes } The car was being washed
Bilen blev vasket }
Bilen er blevet vasket The car has been washed.
The passive is frequently used in Danish
a where the active would be used in English:
Det varme skal lige laves færdigt I must just get the hot dishes ready.
b where English would have a verb + each other:
Skal vi ses i restauranten? Shall we see each other in the restaurant?
- 10 The reflexive is formed as in English, with the reflexive pronouns (See Pronouns, 4):
jeg vasker mig I wash myself
du vasker dig you (familiar) wash yourself
han vasker sig he washes himself
hun vasker sig she washes herself
den, det vasker sig it washes itself
vi vasker os we wash ourselves
I vasker jer you wash yourselves (familiar)
De vasker dem you (polite) wash yourself/yourselves
de vasker sig they wash themselves.
Not all reflexive verbs in Danish correspond to reflexive verbs in English—for example **at glæde sig to look forward, at skynde sig to hurry.**
- 11 The sequence of tenses is generally the same as in English:
Hun har aldrig moret sig så dejligt She has never enjoyed herself so much;
Hun sagde, at hun aldrig havde moret sig så dejligt. She said she had never enjoyed herself so much.

Modal verbs

- 1 The modal verbs differ from English in that they have both an infinitive and a past participle:

at kunne	can	kan	kunne	kunnet
at skulle	shall	skal	skulle	skullet
at ville	will	vil	ville	villet
at måtte	may, must	må	måtte	måttet
at burde	ought to	bør	burde	burdet
at turde	dare	tør	turde	turdet

De kan ikke komme *They can't come*;

De har ikke kunnet komme *They haven't been able to come*.

- 2 Verbs following the modal verbs are in the infinitive (without *at*), as in English:

Han turde ikke køre bil i Italien. *He didn't dare drive in Italy.*

Hende må jeg tale med. *I must talk to her.*

Jeg skal se, hvad jeg kan gøre for dig. *I'll see what I can do for you.*

- 3 Verbs of motion are often omitted after the modal verbs, when the meaning is indicated by a preposition:

Jeg skal på posthuset. *I'm going to the post office.*

Hun vil til Danmark. *She wants to go to Denmark.*

Vi skal af her. *We want to get off here.*

Irregular and strong verbs

infinitive		present	past	perfect
at anbringe	place	anbringer	anbragte	har anbragt
at bede om	ask for	beder om	bad om	har bedt om
at blive	become	bliver	blev	er blevet
at bringe	bring	bringer	bragte	har bragt
at bære	carry, wear	bærer	bar	har båret
at drikke	drink	drikker	drak	har drukket
at finde	find	finder	fandt	har fundet
at flyve	fly	flyver	fløj	har fløjet
at foreslå	suggest	foreslår	foreslog	har foreslået
at forstå	understand	forstår	forstod	har forstået
at fortælle	tell	fortæller	fortalte	har fortalt
at følge	accompany	følger	fulgte	har fulgt
at få	get	får	fik	har fået
at give	give	giver	gav	har givet
at grundlægge	found	grundlægger	grundlagde	har grundlagt
at gælde	be worth	gælder	gjaldt	har gjaldt
at gøre	do, make	gør	gjorde	har gjort
at gå	go, walk	går	gik	er gået

at have	have	har	havde	har hatt
at hedde	to be called	hedder	hed	har heddet
at holde	stop	holder	holdt	har holdt
at hjælpe	help	hjælper	hjalp	har hjulpet
at komme	come	kommer	kom	er kommet
at lade	let	lader	lod	har ladet
at le	laugh	ler	lo	har leet
at ligge	lie	ligger	lå	har ligget
at lyde	sound	lyder	lød	har lydt
at lægge	lay, put	lægger	lagde	har lagt
at løbe	run	løber	løb	er løbet
at nyde	enjoy	nyder	nød	har nydt
at overlade	leave	overlader	overlod	har overladt
at overskride	exceed	overskrider	overskred	har overskredet
at rive	tear	river	rev	har revet
at ryge	smoke	ryger	røg	har røget
at se	see	ser	så	har set
at sidde	sit	sidder	sad	har siddet
at sige	say	siger	sagde	har sagt
at skrive	write	skriver	skrev	har skrevet
at skære	cut	skærer	skar	har skåret
at slå	beat, hit	slår	slog	har slået
at spørge	ask	spørger	spurgte	har spurgt
at stige	rise	stiger	steg	er steget
at stikke	put	stikker	stak	har stukket
at stå	stand	står	stod	har stået
at synes	think, find	synes	syntes	har syntes
at synge	sing	synger	sang	har sunget
at sælge	sell	sælger	solgte	har solgt
at sætte	put	sætter	satte	har sat
at tage	take	tager	tog	har taget
at trække	draw, wind	trækker	trak	har trukket
at tælle	count	tæller	talte	har talt
at undgå	avoid	undgår	undgik	har undgået
at vide	know	ved	vidste	har vidst
at være	be	er	var	har været

The modal verbs:

at kunne	can	kan	kunne	har kunnet
at skulle	shall	skal	skulle	har skullet
at ville	will	vil	ville	har villet
at måtte	may, must	må	måtte	har måttet
at burde	ought to	bør	burde	har burdet
at turde	dare	tør	turde	har turdet

Numerals

1 en, et	1. første	1st
2 to	2. anden	2nd
3 tre	3. tredje	3rd
4 fire	4. fjerde	4th
5 fem	5. femte	5th
6 seks	6. sjette	6th
7 syv	7. syvende	7th
8 otte	8. ottende	8th
9 ni	9. niende	9th
10 ti	10. tiende	10th
11 elleve	11. ellefte	11th
12 tolv	12. tolvte	12th
13 tretten	13. trettende	13th
14 fjorten	14. fjortende	14th
15 femten	15. femtende	15th
16 seksten	16. sekstende	16th
17 sytten	17. syttende	17th
18 atten	18. attende	18th
19 nitten	19. nittende	19th
20 tyve	20. tyvende	20th
21 enogtyve	21. enogtyvende	21st
30 tredive	30. tredivte	30th
40 fyrre	40. fyrretyvende	40th
50 halvtreds	50. halvtredsindstyvende	50th
60 tres	60. tresindstyvende	60th
70 halvfjerds	70. halvfjerdsindstyvende	70th
80 firs	80. firsindstyvende	80th
90 halvfems	90. halvfemsindstyvende	90th
100 (et) hundrede		
1000 (et) tusind		

5276 fem tusinde to hundrede og seksoghalvfjerds

Dates and times

1 The days of the week are

mandag	Monday
tirsdag	Tuesday
onsdag	Wednesday
torsdag	Thursday
fredag	Friday
lørdag	Saturday
søndag	Sunday

2 The months of the year are

januar
februar
marts
april
maj
juni
juli
august
september
oktober
november
december

3 The ordinals are used in dates, as in English:

den nittende marts 1976 (nitten hundrede og seksoghalvfjerds) *the nineteenth (of) March 1976.*

4 Note the following expressions of time:

om en halv time, om fem minutter in half an hour, in five minutes; to gange om ugen twice a week

på fredag next Friday; i fredags last Friday; om fredagen on Fridays

i dag today, i morgen tomorrow, i overmorgen the day after tomorrow, i aften this evening, i går yesterday, i forgårs the day before yesterday, i aften last night.

6 Telling the time

a Klokken means both *the time* and *o'clock*:

Hvad er klokken? What's the time?

Klokken er otte. It's eight o'clock.

b The half-hour is always counted as a half towards the following hour:

8.30 halv ni (lit. half nine).

c A quarter past is *et kvarter over*; a quarter to *et kvarter i*:

8.15 et kvarter over otte

8.45 et kvarter i ni.

d From one minute to twenty minutes past the hour, the time is . . . minutter over . . . :

8.01 et minut over otte;

8.20 tyve minutter over otte.

e From twenty minutes past the hour to twenty minutes to the following hour, the time is counted in minutes to or past the half-hour:

8.21 ni minutter i halv ni (lit. nine minutes to half nine)

8.29 et minut i halv ni (lit. one minute to half nine)

8.39 ni minutter over halv ni (lit. nine minutes past half nine).

f From twenty minutes to one minute to the hour, the time is . . . minutter i . . . :

8.46 fjorten minutter i ni fourteen minutes to nine.

Prepositions

It is difficult to translate prepositions, as one Danish word might have half a dozen equivalents in English, depending on the context. For example:

De lander om fem minutter. *They're landing in five minutes.*

Jeg har hørt så meget om rødgrød. *I've heard so much about rødgrød.*

Hvad mener De om de lysegrå slacks her? *What do you think of these light grey slacks?*

afdelingen lige om hjørnet *the department just round the corner*

The following will serve as a guide:

ad	along, at, by	i	in(to)
af	of, off	imellem	between, among
bagefter	behind, later	inden	before
bagi	at the back of	med	with
blandt	among	mod	against, towards
efter	after	om	in, about, round
for	for	over	past, over, of
foran	in front of	på	on, at
fra	from	siden	since
før	before	til	to, for, until
gennem	through	ved	at, near, by
hos	with, at		

Word order

1 Main clauses:

- a In normal sentences the word order is the same as in English, i.e. with the subject before the verb:

De skal jo først hente bagagen *They will first pick up the luggage*

De kan møde hende på gaden *You can meet her in the street*

Henrik og jeg ordner resten heroppe *Henrik and I will see to the rest up here.*

- b Word order in Danish, however, is more flexible than in English, and for emphasis or variety a sentence can start with something other than the subject—i.e. an adverb, or adverbial expression, or subordinate clause (see below) or even an object. When this happens the verb follows immediately afterwards, so that the subject and verb are inverted:

Først skal de jo hente bagagen.

Hende kan du møde på gaden.

Heroppe ordner Henrik og jeg resten.

- c Inversion of the verb and subject also occurs in questions, except where an interrogative (*hvem*, *hvad*) is the subject of the sentence (in this respect the order is the same as in English):

Skal de først hente bagagen?

Kan du møde hende på gaden?

Er Henrik og Lise hjemme?

Har I spist morgenmad? but

Hvorfor kommer han?

Hvem har købt dit hus?

Hvad har gjort dig så glad?

- d Inversion also occurs in exclamations:

Hvor er der mange blomster!

2 Subordinate clauses:

- a Inversion does not occur in subordinate clauses:

Det er ham, der har gjort det. *He's done it* (lit. *It is he who has done it*).

Hun sagde, at hun havde moret sig. *She said that she had enjoyed herself.*

Word order here is the same as in English.

- b In subordinate clauses, however, there are two main differences between Danish and English:

i the adverb is placed before the main verb, rather than after it:

Hun sagde, at hun aldrig havde moret sig så dejligt. *She said that she had never (lit. never had) enjoyed herself so much.*

Note: in a main clause the order would be the same as in English:

Hun havde aldrig moret sig så dejligt. *She had never enjoyed herself so much.*

ii in clauses containing *som* and a preposition, the preposition always comes at the end of the clause:

Lene har tegnet bordet, som jeg har lavet kaklerne til. *Lene designed the table, which I made the tiles for* (not *for which I made the tiles* as in English).

Som cannot be governed by a preposition.

To recapitulate:

Man havde et talsystem med tyve i gamle dage. *They had a numerical system based on twenty in the old days.* This is a normal sentence with the same word order as in English—See N1a.

I gamle dage havde man et talsystem med tyve. The sentence starts with an element other than the subject, so the subject and verb are inverted—See N1b.

Havde man i gamle dage et talsystem med tyve? Subject and verb are inverted, because this is a question—N1c.

Det er sådan, fordi man i gamle dage havde et talsystem med tyve. In the subordinate clause subject and verb are in the normal order, but the adverbial expression *i gamle dage* is placed before the verb instead of after it—See N2bi.

Punctuation

Danish punctuation is similar to the English, but there are two things to be remembered:

- 1 There must be a comma after each clause containing a subject and verb:

Det er da godt, det ikke regner mere, men vejret er noget gråt, og der er nogle slemme, sorte skyer. *It's a good thing it isn't raining any more, but the weather is rather grey, and there are some nasty black clouds.*

- 2 Subordinate clauses are always surrounded by commas:

Henrik Jørgensen er min far, og hans kone, der hedder Lise, er min mor. Henrik Jørgensen is my father, and his wife, who is called Lise, is my mother.

Danish sounds (*Danske lyde*)

In this section you will hear the sounds of the Danish language. First of all you will hear the sounds in individual words; then you will hear pairs of words in which similar sounds are contrasted. The sounds being practised are printed in bold type, and they are numbered to help you to identify them. At the end of the section there is also a key in which you are given more examples, from the text, of the numbered sounds.

The sounds section consists of 6 parts. The first and second deal with the consonants, the third and fourth with the vowels; the fifth part deals with the glottal stop, vowel length and stress, and the last part with the alphabet.

Danske lyde Danish sounds

Første del First part

Konsonanter: lyt og gentag Consonants: listen and repeat

In this part you can hear the Danish consonants in different positions—first at the beginning of a word (in the left-hand column) and then in the middle (right-hand column). XXXXX indicates that the sound does not appear in that position; e.g. the **g** in **daglig** is always found in the middle of a word, never at the beginning.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 bande swear | 1 globus globe |
| 2 pande forehead | 2 opus opus |
| 3 mand man | 3 samme same |
| 4 fandt found | 4 Afa untranslatable (trade name) |
| 5 vandt won | 5 Java Java |
| XXXXX | 6 daglig daily |
| 7 dan form | 7 Oda girl's name |
| 8 tand tooth | 8 nota bill |
| 9 nat night | 9 kande jug |
| 10 sat placed | 10 glose word |
| 11 sjat drop | 11 loge box (in a theatre) |
| 12 land country | 12 alle all |
| XXXXX | 13 padder amphibians |
| 14 Janne girl's name | XXXXX |
| XXXXX | 15 bager baker |
| 16 gasser gases | 16 Egon boy's name |
| 17 kasser boxes, cash-desks | 17 Hakon boy's name |
| XXXXX | 18 unge young |
| 19 rase rage | 19 Ærø an island in Denmark |
| XXXXX | 20 Færøerne The Faroes |
| 21 handle trade | XXXXX |

Now **b**, **d** and **g** (in the left-hand column) and **p**, **t** and **k** (in the right-hand column) are combined with the **j**, **l**, **r** and **n** sounds. Note that a word is not always written as it is pronounced; **Bianca** has a "bj" sound, although it is written with "i"

Bianca girl's name

blade leaves

brise breeze

djævel devil

drenge boys

skjule hide

glade happy

gnejs gneiss

grave dig graves

pjanker fool about

plade sheet, record

prise praise

tjene serve, earn

trænge need

kjole dress

klaget complained

knejs strut

krave collar

Slut på første del End of first part

Danske lyde Danish sounds

Anden del Second part

Lyt og gentag Listen and repeat

In this section similar-sounding or frequently-confused sounds are contrasted. You will see again that words are not always pronounced as you would expect. For example, the **v** in **ravne** and the **g** in **kagle** are pronounced the same, as a "u" sound.

1 **basser** fat men

1 **globus** globe

16 **gilde** party

16 **Aga** untranslatable (trade name)

16 **lægger** lay

16 **lukker** close

7 **denne** this

7 **Oda** girl's name

7 **lotter** members of Danish
Women's Voluntary Army Corps

7 **poter** paws

2 **passer** fits, is correct

2 **opus** opus

17 **kilde** spring, well

17 **Haka** type of washing machine

15 **læger** doctors

15 **låger** gates

8 **tænde** light

8 **Ota** brand of oatmeal

13 **lodder** weights

13 **poder** grafts

8 **erotisk** erotic

7 **melodisk** melodic

13 **periodisk** periodic

6 **ravne** ravens

6 **kagle** cackle

19 **professorat** professorship

19 **sky rosen** avoid the praise

13 **mader** feed

13 **ved at**

15 **regne** rain

15 **kegle** cone, skittle

20 **storagtig** haughty

20 **skyr osen** avoid the smoke

12 **maler** painter

12 **vil** will

Slut på anden del End of second part

Danske lyde Danish sounds

Tredje del Third part

Vokaler: lyt og gentag Vowels: listen and repeat

In this part you can hear the Danish vowels. The words on the left have long vowels, and those on the right short vowels:

22 **kile** wedge

24 **kele** shallot

26 **kæle** caress

28 **karle** fellows

XXXXX

XXXXX

31 **Karla** girl's name

33 **myre** ant

35 **møre** tender

37 **røbe** disclose

39 **smøre** smear, lubricate

XXXXX

41 **ugle** owl

43 **Ole** boy's name

45 **åle** chaff

47 **årle** early

XXXXX

23 **mit** my

25 **midt** (in the) middle

27 **mæt** satisfied, full

XXXXX

29 **bræt** board

30 **mat** weak

32 **rat** steering-wheel

34 **bytter** exchange

36 **bøtter** tubs

38 **sønner** sons

XXXXX

40 **rønner** hovels

42 **huldet** the flesh

44 **foto** photo

46 **hullet** the hole

XXXXX

48 **holdet** the team

Slut på tredje del End of third part

Danske lyde *Danish sounds*

Fjerde del *Fourth part*

Lyt og gentag *Listen and repeat*

In this section similar vowels are contrasted. In each pair of words the vowels are of the same length—short or long—with the exception of **halve-hale**, **Hanne-hane**, **ånde-orne** and **skotter-skorter**, in which the first word of each pair has a short vowel, and the second a long vowel:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 28 faser <i>phases</i> | 31 farcer <i>farces</i> |
| 28 Ane <i>girl's name</i> | 31 Arne <i>boy's name</i> |
| 32 alder <i>age</i> | 30 Aller <i>place name</i> |
| 32 hva' <i>pardon</i> | 30 hvad <i>what</i> |
| 30 halve <i>half</i> | 28 hale <i>tail</i> |
| 30 Hanne <i>girl's name</i> | 28 hane <i>cock</i> |
| 30 sat <i>placed</i> | 27 sæt <i>set</i> |
| 30 kande <i>jug</i> | 27 kende <i>know</i> |
| 31 lange <i>long</i> | 27 længe <i>for a long time</i> |
| 31 bakke <i>hill</i> | 27 begge <i>both</i> |
| 28 hase <i>hamstring</i> | 26 hæse <i>hoarse</i> |
| 28 male <i>paint</i> | 26 mæle <i>speech, voice</i> |
| 32 rande <i>edges</i> | 29 rende <i>run</i> |
| 27 lægger <i>lay</i> | 25 ligger <i>lie</i> |
| 26 læne <i>lean</i> | 24 Lene <i>girl's name</i> |
| 29 resten <i>the rest</i> | 27 risten <i>the grate</i> |
| 27 bredt <i>broad(ly)</i> | 23 Brit <i>girl's name</i> |
| 34 skyld <i>owe</i> | 36 skylle <i>rinse, pour</i> |
| 33 kyle <i>throw, fling</i> | 35 køle <i>cool</i> |
| 34 kryster <i>coward</i> | 38 ryster <i>shake</i> |
| 37 skynde <i>hurry</i> | 38 skønne <i>estimate</i> |
| 37 synder <i>sin(s)</i> | 38 sønner <i>sons</i> |
| 37 grynt <i>grunt</i> | 40 grønt <i>green</i> |
| 40 tør <i>thaw(s)</i> | 39 tør <i>dry</i> |
| 40 skøre <i>fragile</i> | 39 gøre <i>do</i> |

- 41 **skule** *scowl*
 41 **stuer** *rooms*
 43 **skole** *school*
 43 **Lone** *girl's name*

- 41 **ugle** *owl*
 42 **huldet** *the flesh*

- 46 **sukker** *sugar*
 46 **kost** *broom*

- 48 **ånde** *breathe*
 48 **skotter** *Scots*

- 47 **når** *when*
 47 **årle** *early*

Fjerde del *Fourth part* **Fortsæt** *Continue*

- 22 **Lise** *girl's name*

- 23 **killing** *kitten*

- 33 **hyle** *yell*
 33 **tysser** *shush*

- 24 **sele** *strap*

- 25 **skille** *separate*

- 27 **risten** *the grate*

- 35 **søle** *slush*

- 35 **møre** *tender*

- 29 **rende** *run*

- 37 **høne** *hen*

- 38 **bønne** *bean*

- 38 **røsten** *the voice*

- 40 **rønne** *hovel*

- 28 **smager** *taste*

- 29 **hjerne** *brain*

- 29 **mærke** *mark*

Slut på fjerde del *End of fourth part*

- 43 **skole** *school*
 43 **store** *large*

- 45 **skåle** *bowls*
 45 **låne** *lend, borrow*

- 45 **åle** *chaff*

- 46 **hullet** *the hole*

- 48 **sokker** *socks*
 48 **kost** *food*

- 47 **orne** *boar*
 47 **skorter** *shorten*

- 45 **nå** *reach*
 45 **åle** *chaff*

- 33 **lyse** *light*

- 34 **kylling** *chicken*

- 41 **hule** *cave*
 41 **tudser** *toad*

- 35 **søle** *slush*

- 36 **skylle** *rinse, pour*

- 38 **røsten** *the voice*

- 43 **sole** *sun (verb)*

- 43 **more** *amuse*

- 40 **rønne** *hovel*

- 45 **håne** *mock*

- 46 **bonde** *farmer*

- 46 **rusten** *rusty*

- 48 **dronning** *queen*

- 39 **smøre** *smear*

- 40 **hjørne** *corner*
 40 **mørke** *darkness*

Danske lyde *Danish sounds***Femte del** *Fifth part***Stød: lyt og gentag** *Glottal stop: listen and repeat*

This part contrasts words with and without the glottal stop (in the right and left-hand columns respectively). The glottal stop is an abrupt closure of the vocal cords so that the passage of air is momentarily blocked. Then the air trapped below the throat is suddenly released with pressure, producing a sound rather like that heard at the beginning of a cough, and which is heard in some English dialects such as in the Cockney pronunciation of *bottle*. In Danish, however, unlike English, the glottal stop is not a substitute for another sound, and must therefore always be pronounced. It is not indicated in print, and you will have to listen carefully to hear where it is pronounced. To help you hear where the glottal stop falls, the syllable containing the glottal stop is printed in bold type where the word has more than one syllable.

anden *second*
mig *me*

kørende *driving*
noget *something*

jo *you know*
hest *horse*

anden *the duck*
maj *May*

køerne *the cows*
nået *reached*

jo *yes*
hæst *hoarse(ly)*

Tryk: lyt og gentag *Stress: listen and repeat*

Here words stressed on the first syllable (in the left-hand column) are contrasted with words stressed on the second syllable (right-hand column):

billigst *cheapest*
August *boy's name*

bilist *motorist*
august *August*

Vokal længde: lyt og gentag *Vowel length: listen and repeat*

In this section words with long vowels (on the left) are contrasted with words with short vowels (on the right):

22 ile *hurry*
24 mene *mean*
26 læse *read*
31 parker *parks*
33 dyse *nozzle*
35 køle *cool*

23 ilde *badly*
25 minde *remind*
27 læsse *load*
32 pakker *parcels*
34 dysse *hush*
36 kølle *club*

39 høne *hen*

41 kugle *ball*

45 låne *lend, borrow*

40 kønne *good-looking*

42 kulde *coldness*

46 lunde *grooves*

Slut på femte del *End of fifth part***Danske lyde** *Danish sounds***Sjette del: alfabetet** *Sixth part: the alphabet***Lyt og gentag** *Listen and repeat*

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z Æ Ø Å
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z æ ø å

Slut på sjette del *End of sixth part***Key to Danish sounds**

Consonants and vowels in the sounds section have been numbered. Where words have the same number, they have the same consonant or vowel sound. This key relates words from the lessons to sounds in the sounds section.

Consonants:

(Sounds section)

1 **b** as in **bande** globus **basser**

2 **p** as in **pande** opus **passer**

3 **m** as in **mand** samme

4 **f** as in **fandt** Afa

5 **v** as in **vandt** Java

6 **g** as in **daglig** kagle

v as in **ravne**

(Course text)

Bjørn **køber** **bo** **spise** **hjelpe**
suppen **kopperne** **biler** Kastrup

pænt **penge** **pas** **plade**

hjem **kommer** **må** **mor**

lufthavn **far** **fly** **først** **kaffe**

venter **hvordan** **sølvvarer** Svend

bagsædet

dav **København** **herover** **havfrue** **sov**
brev

dag **hvordan** **dansker** **datter**
kuffter **billetter**

student **tirsdag** **til** **taler**
båndoptageren

noget **navn** Svend **mand**

Svends **pas** **seks** **skyskrabere**

7 **d** as in **dan** Oda **denne** melodisk

8 **t** as in **tand** nota **tænde** erotisk

9 **n** as in **nat** kande

10 **s** as in **sat** glose

- 11 **sj** as in sjat loge
 12 **l** as in land alle maler vil
 13 **d** as in padder mader ved
 14 **j** as in Janne
 15 **g** as in bager læger låger
 16 **g** as in gasser Egon gilde
 17 **k** as in kasser Hakon kilde
 Haka
 18 **ng** as in unge
 19 **r** as in rase Ærø professorat
 20 **r** as in Færøerne
 21 **h** as in handle

Vowels:

- 22 **i** as in kile
 23 **i** as in mit
 24 **e** as in kele
 25 **i** as in midt
 26 **æ** as in kæle hæse mæle
 27 **e** as in mæt sæt kende
 28 **a** as in karle faser Ane hase
 29 **æ** as in bræt rende hjerne mærke
 30 **a** as in mat sat kande
 31 **a** as in Karla lange bakke farcer
 32 **a** as in rat alder hva' rande
 33 **y** as in myre hyle tysser
 34 **y** as in bytter kryster
 35 **ø** as in møre søle
 36 **ø** as in bøtter
 37 **ø** as in røbe skynde synder
 38 **ø** as in sønner ryster skønne
 39 **ø** as in smøre gøre

- ingeniør sjette bagagen
 taler lille dejlig heller
 glædet møde mad sidder rødgrød
 hjem hjælpe jer Jensen
 bog piger salget smager
 god grosserer klokken ikke rødgrød
 kan eksporteret tak knivene smagt
 sengen omkring udlænding
 rød grå
 lære værre far
 hus Henrik havfrue

- Lise tiden lige fire sine
 fint billetter dit tier
 Lene feder set bede ben
 til ting ligger ikke hende
 glæder lære pæne læne været
 hjem penge Henrik men selv Else
 Jensen halvtreds
 taler plade bagagen statuen
 statsborger stadig
 er gerne værsgo' kirsebær værst
 desværre
 dansker mand han ja pas lander
 skal
 tager farve arbejde arve bare
 har taxa tak fra kaffe
 lyder tyve flyver nydelig nyde
 syv byen fly hyggeligt lyshåret
 skyskrabere bygger
 møde ingeniør fløde følte humør
 høre
 sølv ønske brød København køkken
 sødt synd
 køber bøgeskov løb iøvrigt krydder
 grøn køn gulerødder krøller øl
 søndag løn stønne mønster
 frøken kører løfte sørge

- 40 **ø** as in rønner grønt

- 41 **u** as in ugle
 42 **u** as in huldet

- 43 **o** as in Ole skole store
 44 **o** as in foto
 45 **å** as in åle nå
 46 **u** as in hullet sukker kost
 47 **å** as in årle orne skorter når
 48 **o** as in holdet ånde skotter kost

The glottal stop:

- anden maj køerne nået jo hæst

- gør fyrre først smørrebrød strømpe
 tørre
 tusind huse mur bule gule ud
 du student naturligvis minut
 hundrede
 bor kone mor skole tror krone
 god(dag) grosserer to (Lange)bro
 bog noget åbne låne åben
 kuffert lufthavn unge mon
 morgen formiddag ordner år vores
 kommer bånd godt om told kop

- lektion dag Jørgensen Bjørn byen
 pænt kommer selv ting dansk mand
 student Svend København guld
 informationen gennem tolv syv
 orden fortolde etc.

Danish Vocabulary

Note: The letter **w** only occurs in Danish in words of foreign origin, and is usually treated alphabetically as a **v**, so that **whisky** comes before **vi**.

A

à 7
ad 6, 12
et aerogram (-mer) 7
af 1, 6, 7
af sted 12
en afdeling (-er) 8
at aflevere 28
et afløb (-) 17
en afrikaner (-e) 27
at afskaffe 9
afslappende 16
en aften (-er) 7
afvekslende 16
en agurk (-er) 23
al 4
en alder (aldre) 9
aldrig 5
alene 14
alle 3
alle steder 7
allerde 12
allerede 13
allesammen 3
alligevel 12
almindelig 6
alt 2
alt for 22
en altertavle (-r) 15
altid 11
altsammen 13
altså 7
alverdens 24
alvorlig(t) 25
en amerikaner (-e) 18
anbragt 20
anden 2, 4
andre 3
at ane 19
en anemone (-r) 13
at ankomme 28
en ankomsthall (-ler) 3
anstrengende 16
et apparat (-er) 17
en appelsin (-er) 23

april 13
arbejdende 18
en arbejdsgiver (-e) 18
(en) arbejdsløshed 18
et arbejdsmarked (-er) 18
en arm (-e) 24
at arrangeres 21
en artist (-er) 14
at arve 5
en asparges 23
at 2, 5
atten 18
attende 18
august 13
en avis (-er) 17

B

et bad (-e) 16
at bade 13
et badekar (-) 17
et badeværelse (-r) 4
(en) bagage 2
at bage 22
bagefter 19, 27
bagfra 12
bagi 11
et bogsæde (-r) 3
bag ved 3
bakket 15
en balkon (-er) 14
en balletforestilling
(-er) 14
bange (for) 27
at banke 17
en barber (-er) 25
bare 5, 14
et barn (børn) 13
en barndom 7
et barndomshjem (-) 7
at bede om 17
bedre 6
bedst 7
bedsteforældre 7
en befolkning (-er) 15

begge 8
begge to 8
at begynde 15
behagelig 6, 27
Belgien 26
en belgier 27
beliggende 16
en beliggenhed 6
en bemærkning (-er) 9
et ben (-) 21
(en) benzin 26
en benzintank (-e) 26
at bestemme 11
at bestemme sig 6
at bestille plads 19
et besøg (-) 27
at betale 7
det betaler sig 7
en betjening (-er) 11
en bijouterieafdeling
(-er) 8
en bil (-er) 3
et billede (-r) 10
en billet (-ter) 1
et billetter (-ler) 12
en billetter (-er) 15
billigere 5
et bilmærke (-r) 15
en biludlejning (-er) 15
et biluheld (-) 11
en bjørneskindshue (-r)
14
blandet 24
blandt andet (bl. a.)
10
blevet 3, 20
at blive 2, 23
at blive forkølet 13
at blive nødt til 12
en blomkål 23
en blomme (-r) 23
en blomst (-er) 13
en bluse (-r) 8
blå 6

at bo 4, 7
 en bog (bøger) 1
 en boghandel (-dler) 26
 en bondegård (-e) 15
 et bord (-e) 5
 en borddame (-r) 23
 en bordherre (-r) 23
 en bordplan (-er) 21
 bortset fra 14
 en boulevard (-er) 27
 Boulogneskoven 27
 bragt 17
 et brev (-e) 7
 et brilletui (-er) 10
 brie 24
 briller 27
 at bringe 17
 at bringe i orden 17
 en bro (-er) 15
 en brochure (-r) 7
 en bror (brødre) 28
 at bruge 6, 26
 at have brug for 15
 brun 21
 et brusebad (-e) 16
 brusekabiner 21
 en brygger (-e) 10
 et bryst 24
 (et) brænde 20
 brændt af 20
 en brødkniv (-e) 25
 bukser 8
 en bule (-r) 11
 en bus (-ser) 9
 at burde 27
 en butik (-ker) 6
 en by (-er) 1
 at bygge 3
 en bygning (-er) 18
 at bære 16
 en bøgeskov (-e) 13
 at bøje 11
 en bøjle (-r) 27
 bør 27
 børn 14
 en båd (-e) 7
 både . . . og 4
 et bål (-) 19
 et bånd (-) 1
 en båndoptager (-e) 1

C
 et cafeteria (-rier) 2
 camembert 24
 at campere 15
 camping 16
 et campingpas 15
 en campingplads (-er) 15
 (et) campingudstyr (-) 15
 en centimeter (cm) (-) 22
 et centrum (centrer) 3
 en chance (-r) 15
 at få chance for 28
 charmerende 16
 et chatol (-ler) 22
 en check (-s) 18
 en cigaret (-ter) 2
 cirka (ca.) 15
 en citron (-er) 23
 en citronfromage (-r) 17
 en cognac (-er) 2

D
 da 6, 9, 15, 28
 en dag (-e) 1
 en dagligstue (-r) 4, 18
 en dame (-r) 2
 en damefrisør (-er) 25
 danablu 24
 Danmark 1
 et dannebrogssflag (-) 14
 at danse 26
 dansk 1
 en dansker (-e) 1
 en datter (døtre) 3
 dav(s) 1
 de 4
 de 2
 De 2
 de der 24
 de her 9
 december 13
 dejlig 4
 en del (-e) 4, 8
 en del 8
 dem 4
 Dem 3
 den 3

den der 24
 den her 9
 dengang 7
 denne 11
 der 1, 3, 10, 22
 derefter 26
 Deres 2, 3
 derfra 26
 derhenne 3
 derind 6
 derinde 9
 derop 28
 deroppe 12
 derovre 5
 desuden 25
 desværre 8
 det 1
 det vil sige (d.v.s.) 15
 dig 1, 21
 en digter (-e) 13
 din, dit, dine 1
 en dobbeltbillet (-ter) 12
 et dobbeltværelse (-r) 16
 dominerende 20
 en domkirke (-r) 12
 at dreje 25
 en dreng (-e) 20
 at drikke 2
 drikkevarer 24
 en drink (-s) 4
 en dronning (-er) 14
 drukket 24
 du 1
 at være dus 3
 dygtig 5
 dyr 8
 at dække 5
 en død 7
 en dør (-e) 9
 dårlig 12

E
 efter 5, 8
 en eftermiddag (-e) 10
 et efterår (-) 13
 en efterårsmåned (-er) 13
 egen, eget 12

egentlig 8
 en eg 10
 Eiffeltårnet 27
 at eksistere 7
 at ekspedere 8
 en ekspeditrice (-r) 8
 at eksportere 4
 ekstra 17
 eller 6
 ellers 11, 18
 elleve 11
 ellefte 11
 at elske 10
 en 1, 27
 en (et) til 19
 end 6
 endelig 6
 endnu 3, 23
 endnu en 19
 en ener (-e) 18
 energisk 20
 eneste 10
 enestående 22
 et engagement (-er) 14
 engang 28
 (et) engangsservice 24
 en engel (engle) 16
 England 24
 enhver 10
 enig 18
 enkel 14
 et enkeltværelse (-r) 16
 enogtyve 3
 enogtyvende 21
 ens 14
 ensfarvet 8
 er 1
 et 1
 ethvert 10
 Europa 7
 europæisk 14

F
 en fabrik 6
 en fader (fædre) 14
 et fagforbund (-) 18
 faktisk 20
 en familie (-r) 1
 fandt 18
 fandtes 16

fantastisk 14
 en far (fædre) 1
 en farmor (farmødre) 5
 en fars 24
 en fartgrænse (-r) 21
 en farve (-r) 6
 et farvel 7
 farvel så længe 7
 fat: få fat i 28
 have fat i 26
 februar 13
 at fede 2
 en fejltagelse (-r) 28
 ved en fejltagelse 28
 at fejres 20
 fem 2
 femoghalvtreds 7
 femogtres 9
 femogtyve 25
 femogtyvende 25
 femte 5
 femten 15
 femtende 15
 en ferie (-r) 25
 en fersken (ferskner) 23
 en fest (-er) 23
 at feste 24
 festlig 14
 fik 9
 fin 1
 en film 25
 et filmsapparat (-er) 15
 at finde 4
 at finde ud af 28
 at findes 16
 fire 4
 fireogtyve 24
 fireogtyvende 24
 et firma (-er) 28
 firs 18
 firsindstyve 18
 en fisk (-) 17
 en fiskefilet (-ter) 11
 fjerde 4
 et fjernsyn (-) 17
 et fjols (-er) 14
 en fjord (-e) 13
 fjorten 14
 fjorten dage 15

fjortende 14
 en flaske (-r) 2
 Flensborg 26
 flere 12
 fleste 6
 flot 6
 et fly (-) 2
 at flytte 6
 flyttemand 22
 at flyttes 22
 at flyve 1
 (et) flæskeskød 24
 en flæskkesteg (-e) 17
 en fløde 2
 en fodgængerovergang (-e) 26
 et folk (-) 10
 et Folketing (-) 18
 en folketingsmand (-mænd) 18
 for 4, 10, 12
 for at 3
 for resten 24
 for . . . siden 6
 foran 3
 at forandre 4
 en forberedelse (-r) 19
 forbi 14
 en forbindelse (-r) 12
 fordi 7
 et fordæk (-) 26
 foreslog 23
 at foreslå 3
 en forestilling (-er) 14
 at foretrække 10
 forfriskende 5
 forfærdelig 13
 forhåbentlig 11
 forkølet: at blive
 forkølet 13
 forkortet 18
 et forlig (-) 18
 forløren 24
 en forlængelse (-r) 22
 en formiddag (-e) 1
 en fornøjelse (-r) 28
 god fornøjelse! 28
 en forretning (-er) 9
 en fornøjelsesrejse (-r) 25

en forrude (-r) 26	en fyr (-e) 24	at give 26	halvanden 25	herner 28	en husleje (-r) 5
en forsikring (-er) 15	fyrretyvende 18	gjort 4	en halvdel (-e) 15	hernede 27	hvad 4
et forsikringselskab (-er) 11	et fyrværkeri (-er) 14	glad (for at) 3	halvfems 7	herover 4	hvad for 22
forskellig 14	færdig 5	et glas (-) 4	halvfemsindstyvende 18	en herre (-r) 14	hvem 3
en forstad (-stæder) 12	en færg (-r) 7	at glemme 4	halvfemte 18	hertil 14	hver 10
at forstå 13	færre 23	at glæde sig 1	halvfjerde 18	herud 4	en hverdag (-e) 5
at forsøge 5	en fødselsdag (-e) 3	god 1	halvfjerds 18	herude 7	hvid 6
fortalte 23	en fødselsdagsgave (-r) 22	god dag 1	halvfjerdindstyvende 18	at hilse på 3	en hvidvin (-e) 24
at fortjene 22	at føle 9	godt 6	et halvt år 25	en hilse (-sner) 11	hvilken, hvilket 24
at fortolde 2	at føle sig 21	gotisk 15	halvtredje 18	hinanden 1	hvis 6
en fortovscafé (-er) 27	at følge 8	en grad (-er) 13	halvtreds 1	et hindbær (-) 5	hvis 28
at fortælle 7	at følge efter 14	en grammofoonplade (-r) 1	en halvtredser (-e) 7	historisk 27	hvor 1, 3, 13
forvejen: i forvejen 4	før 7, 21	en grosserer (-e) 2	halvtredsendstyvende 18	hjalp 23	hvordan 1
forvirret 27	et førerbevis 15	at grundlægge 10	ham 7	hjem 1	hvorfor 18
forældre 3	først 2	en grænse (-r) 26	Hamborg 27	hjemme 3	hvornår 1
et forår (-) 13	først(e) 1	græsk 24	en hamburgerryg 24	hjemmelavet 11	at hygge sig 21
en forårsblomst (-er) 13	først på måneden 23	grøn 6	han 1	en hjemrejse (-r) 28	hyggelig 3
at fotografere 7	første klassen (1. kl.) 15	grøn salat 23	har 1	hjerterlig 20	hænder 14
et fotografiapparat (-er) 25	få 23	grønlig 8	at have 1	at hjælpe 4	en hætte (-r) 17
fra 2	at få 2	en grønsag (-er) 13	at have råd til 12	at hjælpe til 19	høj 13
Frankrig 26	at få af 24	et grønttorv (-e) 22	en have (-r) 7	at hjælpes ad 20	et højhus (-e) 3
fransk 26	at få råd 23	grå 6	en havefest (-er) 23	et hjørne (-r) 4	højre 5
et franskbrød (-) 24	at få til bords 21	gul 6	en havfrue (-r) 6	en hofdam (-r) 14	til højre 5
en franskmænd (-mænd) 27	fået 4	(et) guld 2	at hedde 1	at holde 10, 12	at høre 14
en fredag (-e) 19	fås 28	en gulerod (-rødder) 23	hej 9	at holde fest 23	at høre hjemme 14
frem 15	at komme frem 19	et gymnasium (-sier) 9	en heks (-e) 20	at holde på 22	at håbe 15
at køre frem 15	en gade (-r) 26	en gyngestol (-e) 22	hel 4	Holland 26	at håbe på 18
at fremkalde 25	et gadekryds (-) 26	gælder 10	det hele 13	hollandsk 26	håbløs 19
et fremmedsprog 25	(et) gadeliv 27	en gæst (-er) 9	hel 26	en hollænder (-e) 27	(en) håndbagage 4
en frikadelle (-r) 6	en gaffel (-fler) 5	et gæsteværelse (-r) 4	et held (-) 9	hos 4	et håndklæde (-r) 27
et frilandsmuseum (-museer) 18	en gallauniform (-er) 14	en gæstfrihed (-er) 22	heldig 4	et hospital (-er) 25	(en) håndsæbe 17
et frimærke (-r) 7	galt 22	at gøre 1	heldigvis 21	et hotel (-ler) 16	en håndvask (-e) 4
frisk 13	gammel 4	at gøre ond 21	heller ikke 4	et hotelværelse (-r) 17	en håndværker (-e) 18
fritidstøj 21	en gang (-e) 4	at gå 3, 12	helst 28	et hoved (-er) 10	
en frokost (-er) 10	en gang (-e) 7	gå i land 24	helt 13	en hovedbanegård (-e) 12	I 3
fru 1	en garde (-r) 14	gå i vandet 13	hen 13	hr. 2	i 1, 2, 5
en frue (-r) 2	en garder (-e) 14	gået 4	hende 3	et hul (-ler) 17	i aften 7
en frugt (-er) 23	(en) gas (-ser) 27	en gård (-e) 16	hende(s) 1	humor 9	i aften 19
en frøken (frøknar) 2	gav 10	haft 3	henrivende 16	et humør 9	i dag 1
fuld 24	en gave (-r) 8	en hakkebøf (-fer) 17	her 1	hun 9	i forgårs 19
en fuldmåne (-r) 25	at gemme sig for 21	hallo 17	herfra 10	et hundrede 2	i formiddag 1
fundet 5	gennem 2	en hals (-e) 8	herhjemme 5	hundrede og	i går 19
fyld 14	et gensyn (-) 7	en halskæde (-r) 8	herind 4	halvtreds 3	i morgen 1
at fylde 26	på gensyn 7	halv 2	herlig 5	en hundredkroneseddel (-sedler) 9	i morges 19
fynsk 21	gerne 2	en halv snes 7		hurtig 12	i nat 19
	gik 9			hurtigt 7	i onsdags 19
				et hus (-e) 4	i orden 2
				at huske 5	i overmorgen 6
					ialt 23

iberegnet 11	en jul 13	en kofanger (-e) 11	en kystvej (-e) 7	en likør (-er) 25	løb 9
en idé (-er) 2	juli 13	at koges 20	en kælder (-e) 22	lille 4	at løbe 10
igen 2	juni 13	kogt 17	kær 28	lille bitte 21	at løfte 22
igennem 12	Jylland 15	kold 12	kærlig 28	Lillebælt 15	et løg (-) 17
ih 3		kom 3	kærlig hilsen 28	en lillefinger (-fingre) 17	en løn(ning) (-er) 18
ikke 2	K	en komedie (-r) 14	De kærligste	en liste (-r) 15	en lørdag (-e) 19
ikke mere 6	(en) kaffe 2	at komme 1	hilsener 28	en liter (-) 26	lå 28
ikke? 21	en kaffekande (-r) 6	at komme sammen	at købe 2	(en) litteratur (-er) 10	at låne 6
en ild 18	et kaffestel (-) 6	med 9	København 2	livlig 23	M
imellem 23	en kakkel (-kler) 22	at komme til 14	en københavner (-e) 2	Landsorganisationen	(en) mad 5
imens 5	et kakkelford (-e) 22	en koncertsal (-e) 14	(et) kød 24	(LO) 18	majdage 12
imponeret 10	et kalkmaleri (-er) 13	en konduktør (-er) 9	et køkken (-er) 5	lo 9	et maleri (-er) 10
at importere 23	(et) kalvekød 17	en kone (-r) 1	køn 6	en lomme (-r) 10	man 6
en impressionist (-er) 6	en kalvemørbrad (-) 17	en kongebegravelse (-r)	at køre 3	en lommebog (-bøger)	en mand (-mænd) 1, 3
ind 1, 5	et kammer (-kamre) 4	13	at køre bil 28	10	en mandag (-e) 1
inde i 6	kan 4	kongelig 14	(en) kål 23	et lommetørklæde (-r)	mange 2
inden 12	det kan lade sig	at konkurrere 18	L	28	at mangle 17
indenfor 4	gøre 27	et kontor (-er) 5	lad os 11	lov 22	marts 13
et indkøb (-) 23	en kartoffel (-fler) 17	en kontrakt (-er) 15	at lade 28	at love 4	en masse (-r) 24
på indkøb 23	en kasse (-r) 8	en kop (-per) 2	at lade blive	(en) luft 26	masser 15
indre 10	en kassette (-r) 1	en kopi (-er) 14	stående 27	en lufthavn 1	masser af 13
at indrette 4	en katolik (-ker) 27	kort 20	lagde 21	(en) luftpost 7	en mave (-r) 24
indtil 16	at kende 2	et kort (-) 10, 22	et land (-e) 10	(et) lufttryk (-) 26	en mavepine (-r) 25
et indtryk (-) 10	at kikke 9	at koste 7	at lande 2	at lugte 27	med 1
en information 2	en kiks (-) 24	en krig (-e) 7	en landsby (-er) 15	at lukke for 27	med det samme 4
ingen 18	et kilo (-) 23	en krone (-) 2	en landsdel (-e) 27	lunefuldt 12	en medicin (-er) 28
en ingeniør (-er) 3	en kilometer (-) 12	en krydder (-e) 19	et landskab (-er) 15	Luxembourg 26	en medisterpølse (-r) 24
ingenting 12	en kirke (-r) 28	en krølle (-r) 25	lang 8	at lyde 1	medregnet 11
et insekt (-er) 26	et kirketårn (-e) 13	en kuffert (-er) 1	i lange tider 23	en lykkelig (-r) 22	meget 4, 6
intelligent 20	et kirsebær (-) 5	en kultur (-er) 10	langt 10	til lykkelig 22	mellem 19
interessant 13	en kjole (-r) 8	et kulturliv (-) 10	at lave 4	lykkedes 20	men 1
at interessere 21	en kjoleafdeling (-er) 8	kun 4	at laves 20	at lykkes 17	at mene 8
at interessere sig	klar 28	en kunde (-r) 6	ledig 16	lyseblå 8	et menneske (-r) 9
21	klar over 25	at kunne 8	at leje 15	lysegrå 8	mens 2
et inventar (-er) 6	at klare sig 26	at kunne lide 8	en lejlighed (-er) 6, 12	lyshåret 3	mere 4
at invitere 19	en klasse (-r) 9	jeg kunne tænke	en lektion (-er) 1	at lysne 20	en messe (-r) 27
inviteret 4	en klassekammerat	mig 8	let 19	lyst 4	mest 4
irriterende 25	(-er) 19	(en) kunsthistorie (-r) 19	lettere 5	at få lyst til 18	en metro (-er) 27
især 21	et klaver (-er) 22	en kunstner (-e) 10	lettest 1	at have lyst til 4	en middag (-e) 5
italiensk 8	at klemme 3	en kunstsamling (-er) 10	at leve 7	en læge (-r) 25	Midsommervisen 20
iøvrigt 19	at klippe 3	en kunstsat (-te) 10	en leverpostej (-er) 11	at lægge 5, 10	en midte (-r) 15
J	at klippes 25	en kunststudstilling (-er) 27	lidt 5	lækker 8	mig 1, 21
ja 1	klog 15	en kupé (-er) 12	lige 2	at læne sig op 14	min, mit, mine 1
en japaner (-e) 27	klokken 14	en kurv (-e) 23	lige netop 5	længere 7	mindre 14
jeg 1	at klæde 8	en kuvert (-er) 5	ligeså 20	at længes efter 26	et mindretal (-) 27
jer 4, 21	at klæde sig på 21	en kvalitet (-er) 8	at ligge 1	at lære 3, 5	mindst 14
jes 4	knap (nok) 16	en kvart (-e) 19	at ligne 4	en lærer (-e) 9	mindst 7
jo 1, 2	knust 26	et kvarter (-) 7	og lignende	lærerigt 27	i det mindste 28
jo tak 4	en kodriver (-e) 13	en kvinde (-r) 28	(o. lign.) 18	at læse 6	et minut (-ter) 2

mod 26
 en modefarve (-r) 8
 en moder (mødre) 14
 moderne 8
 mon 3
 en mor (mødre) 1
 at more sig 9
 en morgen (-er) 10
 en morgenmad 6
 en mormor (-mødre) 5
 morsom 27
 en motorvej (-e) 27
 en mur (-e) 13
 et museum (museer) 10
 en musik 10
 at myldre 26
 en myldretid (-er) 10
 at mægle 18
 mænd 28
 en mængde (-r) 22
 et mærke (-r) 15
 mærkelig 25
 møbler 5
 at møde 3
 at mødes 19
 et mønster (-stre) 8
 mønstret 8
 en mørbrad (-) 17
 mørkeblå 8
 må 1, 2
 må hellere 12
 en måned (-er) 13
 måske 8
 at måtte 7

N
 en nakke (-r) 25
 en nat (nætter) 6
 i nat 16
 (en) natmad 20
 naturligvis 1
 et navn (-e) 2
 ned(e) 7
 en nederdel (-e) 8
 nedrevet 16
 nej 1, 3, 11
 nej tak 2
 nemlig 21
 et net (-) 12
 netop 5

 ni 7
 niende 9
 niogfyrre 2
 nitten 3
 nittende 19
 nogen 10
 nogensinde 13
 noget 2, 19
 nogle 6
 nok 3, 27
 nok så 16
 en nordmand (-mænd)
 18
 nordpå 28
 nordøst 20
 Norge 28
 Normandiet 24
 november 13
 nu 1, 27
 nul 25
 et nummer (numre) 14
 ny 5
 nybygget 16
 nydelig 26
 at nyde 4
 nykalket 15
 næ 9
 nærheden 10
 næste 6
 næsten 16
 nød 7
 nødig 21
 nødvendig 14
 en nøgle (-r) 10
 nå 2
 at nå 12, 17
 når 4
 når som helst 14

O
 ofte 18
 og 1
 og så videre 20
 også 1, 7
 (et) oksekød 17
 (en) oktan (-) 26
 oktober 13
 en oldemor (-mødre) 22
 en olie (-r) 26
 om 7, 28

om 2, 5, 8
 om lidt 19
 om søndagen 28
 omkring 6
 et område (-r) 25
 at omtale 28
 ondt 25
 en onkel (onkler) 28
 en onsdag (-e) 19
 op 6
 at opdrage 20
 en opera 27
 at opføre sig 24
 et ophold (-) 26
 at opleve 13
 en oplevelse (-r) 10
 en opskrift (-er) 5
 optaget 11
 et ord (-) 21
 en orden (ordner) 2
 et ordenstal (-) 18
 ordentligt 6, 21
 at ordne 1
 at ordnes 20
 en organisation (-er) 16
 os 3, 21
 en ost (-e) 11
 otte 8
 ottende 8
 otteoghalvfjerdsinds-
 tyvende 18
 otteogtyve 28
 otteogtyvende 19
 oven i 17
 oven i købet 13
 over 6, 10, 21
 overalt 15
 en overdel (-e) 22
 overfor 22
 at overlade 24
 overmorgen 19
 at overnatte 19
 at overskride 21
 ovre 16

P
 at pakke 1
 en pakke (-r) 9, 24
 at pakkes 20
 pakket ud 4

et palæ (-er) 14
 et pantomimeteater
 (-teatre) 14
 en papirdug (-e) 24
 en papirserviet (-ter) 24
 et par (-) 8
 en paraply (-er) 19
 parat 26
 en pariserinde (-r) 27
 at parkere 6
 en parkeringsplads (-er)
 10
 et parkometer (-metre)
 10
 en parlør (-er) 26
 et parti (-er) 18
 et pas (-) 1
 en passager (-er) 15
 en paskontrol (-ler) 2
 at passe 6
 at passe på 11, 14
 at passe til 8
 passende 16
 at passes 20
 en pave (-r) 27
 en pavillon (-er) 6
 penge 1
 at permanentes 25
 en perron (-er) 12
 (en) persille 23
 Peterskirken 27
 en pige (-r) 3
 en pilgrimsrejse (-r) 27
 at placeres 21
 en plade (-r) 1, 22
 en plads (-er) 4, 14
 en plan (-er) 6
 en plante (-r) 13
 en plasticpose (-r) 24
 at pleje 17
 pludselig 21
 en pløne (-r) 14
 poetisk 13
 en polet (-ter) 9
 et politi 14
 politisk 18
 (et) porcelæn (-er) 6
 en porre (-r) 23
 en portier (-er) 16
 Portugal 27
 portugisisk 17
 en pose (-r) 23
 en postassistent (-er) 7
 et posthus (-e) 6
 et postkort (-) 28
 en postkast (-er) 7
 pragtfuld 5, 9
 praktisk 5
 en pris (-er) 15
 en professor (-er) 19
 præcis 14, 19
 at prøve 11, 12
 pudses 20
 et pund (-) 23
 (et) purløg 23
 at puste 18
 at puste til ilden 18
 pæn 1
 en pære (-r) 23
 på 1, 6
 på dansk 18
 på grund af 16
 en påkørsel (-sler) 11
 (et) pålæg 24

R
 en radio (-er) 27
 en radioavis (-er) 17
 en raket (-ter) 14
 rar 20, 25
 et rat (-) 7
 en recept (-er) 28
 en reception (-er) 16
 at regne 13
 at regne med 15
 en regnfrakke (-r) 19
 en regning (-er) 11
 (et) regnvejr 16
 en rejse (-r) 1
 at rejse 1
 et rejseselskab (-er) 27
 at rende 21
 en reol (-er) 5
 at reservere 11
 en rest (-er) 4
 en restaurant (-er) 10
 ret 13, 15
 en ret (-ter) 25
 en returbillet (-ter) 12
 revet ned 7

et ribs (-) 5
 rig 12
 rigtigt 8
 en ring (-e) 26
 at ringe 9, 11
 ringe på 21
 at rive ned 7
 (en) roastbeef (-) 24
 en rose (-r) 25
 rosé 24
 et rugbrød (-) 24
 en rullepølse (-r) 24
 et rum (-) 21
 rund 8
 et rundstykke (-r) 19
 rundt om 14
 ryge 24
 rød 6
 en rødbede (-r) 17
 en rødgrød 5
 (en) rødkål 17
 en rødvin (-e) 17
 røget 24
 at råbe 14
 en rådhusplads (-er) 3

S
 sagde 19
 sager 10
 sagtens 8
 en sal (-e) 10, 16
 en salat 17, 24
 et salg (-) 4
 at samle 18
 en samling (-er) 10
 samme 3
 sammen 3
 et sammenskudsgilde
 (-r) 23
 en sang (-e) 13
 Sankt Hansaften 19
 en sans (-er) 9
 sat 4
 at savne 17
 Schweiz 27
 at se 2
 se efter 26
 se til 25
 se ud 4
 en seddel (sedler) 11

en sejlbad (-e) 7
 seks 2
 sekscifrede 25
 seksogfyrre 2
 seksogtyve 7
 seksogtyvende 26
 seksten 16
 sekstende 16
 et selskab (-er) 23
 selv 1, 4
 selv tak 6
 selv 9
 selv om 16
 selvfølgelig 24
 en selvrisiko (-er) 11
 selvstændig 19
 sent 19
 at komme for sent 19
 at sende 6
 at sende videre 6
 sendt 28
 senere 4
 en seng (-e) 4
 september 13
 at servere 5
 en servicestation (-er) 26
 en servitrice (-r) 2
 at ses 17, 20
 set 3
 en sherry 4
 shorts 21
 at sidde 3
 en siddeplads (-er) 9
 en side (-r) 3
 en sidegade (-r) 10
 siden 12
 sidst 5
 sig 3
 at sige 3, 26
 sikken 4
 sikker på 21
 sikkert 24
 en sild (-) 11
 (en) silke (-r) 8
 sin, sit, sine 1
 sjette 6
 sjov 9
 sjælden 13

et skab (-e) 4
 en skade (-r) 11
 en skadestue (-r) 25
 skal 1, 2
 skar 25
 en skat (-ter) 11
 en skat (-te) 22
 at ske 9
 en ske (-er) 5
 at skifte 12
 en skildpadde (-r) 24
 en skinke (-r) 24
 en skjorte (-r) 17
 en skjortebukse (-r) 8
 en sko (-) 28
 en skole (-r) 9
 en skoleferie (-r) 15
 en skolekammerat (-er) 2
 et skolenavn (-) 21
 en skov (-e) 12
 skreven 16
 skrevet 5
 skrevet af 5
 at skrive 15
 skrækkelig 13
 skråt 22
 at skubbes 22
 en skulder (skuldre) 14
 skulle 5
 en sky (-er) 19
 (en) sky 25
 en skyld 12
 at skynde sig 21
 en skyskraber (-e) 3
 at skænde 21
 at skændes 21
 et skær (-) 24
 at skære 25
 skøn 6
 slacks 8
 en slags (-) 24
 slank 3
 slem 9
 Slesvig 26
 slet ikke 13
 slog 21
 sloges 21
 en slotsplads (-er) 14
 at slukke for 27

at slæbe 16
 at slå 21
 at slås 21
 en smag 8
 at smage 5
 smart 27
 smuk 4
 en smule (-r) 20
 (et) smør 24
 (et) smørrebrød 11
 små 6
 småpenge 9
 at snakke (om) 9
 en snaps (-e) 11
 snart 3, 19
 (en) sne 13
 en snes (-e) 7
 en sofa (-er) 22
 en sok (-ker) 17
 en sol (-e) 13
 solbriller 27
 et solbær (-) 5
 solgte 10
 som 5, 22
 som 7
 som om 27
 som regel 13
 somme tider 13
 en sommer (somre) 13
 et sommerhus (-e) 19
 en sommernat (-nætter) 24
 sort 6
 at sove 6
 sove til middag 22
 Spanien 27
 en spegepølse (-r) 24
 at spejle sig 14
 at spille 14
 et spir (-) 13
 at spise 4
 et spisebord (-e) 22
 et spisekort (-) 11
 en spisestue (-r) 5
 en spisevane (-r) 11
 en sporvogn (-e) 9
 et sprog (-) 10
 at sprøjte 21
 spurgte 7
 spændende 6
 spændt (på) 3

at spørge 2
 at stable op 20
 stadig 3
 en stage (-r) 22
 at stamme fra 24
 en station (-er) 12
 en statsborger (-e) 2
 en statue (-r) 3
 et sted (-er) 7
 i stedet for 18
 at stege 5
 stegt 17
 et stel (-) 6
 at stemple 9
 at stige 18
 at stige om 9
 at stikke 17
 en stikkontakt (-er) 27
 at stille om til 27
 at stille op 14
 at stilles 20
 stod 7
 et S-tog (-) 12
 en stol (-e) 20
 at stole på 9
 stolt 10
 stopforbud 10
 at stoppes 20
 stor 1
 storartet 12
 et stormagasin (-er) 8
 straks 12
 en strand (-e) 7
 en strejke (-r) 18
 at strejke 27
 strygefri 17
 en strømpe (-r) 17
 strålende 16
 en student (-er) 1
 studieforhold 18
 en stueetage (-r) 8
 et stykke (-r) 12
 et stykke smørrebrød 11
 at stønne 13
 at stå 3
 at stå op 6
 at stå til 8
 (et) sukker 2
 sulten 17
 sund 12

Sundet 7
 super 26
 en suppe (-r) 5
 sur 9
 at svare 23
 en sweater (-e) 8
 en svensker (-e) 18
 Sverige 7
 svær 10
 Sydamerika 27
 sydpå 20
 Sydslesvig 26
 (en) synd 7
 det er synd 7
 at synes 6
 at synges 20
 syntes 5
 sytten 8
 syttende 17
 syv 2
 syvende 7
 syvogfyrre 1
 syvogtres 8
 at sælge 2
 særdeles 19
 særlig 17
 et særpræg (-) 10
 at sætte sig 3
 at sætte vand over 21
 at sættes 20
 en sø 14
 sød 3
 (et) sølv 2
 en sølvlysestage (-r) 22
 en sølvsmed (-e) 1
 sølvtøj 5
 sølvvarer 2
 en sømand (-mænd) 24
 en søn (-ner) 1
 en søndag (-e) 28
 at sørge for 20
 en søster (søstre) 21
 så 1, 2
 så gerne 2
 så 6
 sådan 20

at tage 1, 5, 12
 tage ind på 16
 (en) tak 1
 selv tak 6
 tak for mad 5
 tak selv 8
 at takke 22
 en takst (-er) 7
 et tal (-) 18
 at tale 1
 en tallerken (-er) 5
 et talsystem (-er) 18
 talt 16
 talte med 18
 en tandbørste (-r) 17
 en tandpasta (-er) 17
 en tandpastatube (-r) 17
 en tank (-e) 26
 en tankpasser (-e) 26
 en tante (-r) 28
 en taske (-r) 10
 tatoveret 24
 en tatovering (-er) 24
 en taxa (-er) 1
 en te 19
 at tegne 22
 en telefon (-er) 17
 et telt (-e) 15
 at temperere 17
 en terrasse (-r) 25
 ti 7
 en tid (-er) 2, 15
 tidlig(t) 19
 tidsnok til 19
 tiende 10
 en tier (-e) 2
 en tier 18
 tiere 23
 til 1, 4, 7
 til at 3
 til sidst 5
 tilbage 7
 tilfreds 6
 tilovers 21
 tilpas 17
 tilstoppet 17
 en time (-r) 2
 en times tid 20
 en ting (-) 1
 en tirsdag (-e) 1

T
 at tabe 13
 at tabe sig 13

tit 13
 en tjener (-e) 11
 et tog (-) 12
 toiletsager 17
 (en) told 2
 en tolder (-e) 2
 tolv 12
 tolvte 12
 tom 12
 en tomat (-er) 23
 toogtyve 22
 toogtyvende 22
 en torsdag (-e) 19
 en torvedag (-e) 13
 traf 6
 traf 28
 et trafiklys (-) 26
 en transistorradio (-er)
 17
 en trappe (-r) 12
 travl 9
 at have travlt 9
 tre 3
 tredje 3
 treogtyve 23
 treogtyvende 19
 tres 18
 tresindstyve 18
 tretten 13
 trettende 13
 Triumfbuen 27
 tro 14
 at tro 2
 at true 18
 et træ (-er) 14
 at træffe 28
 at trække 14, 19
 at trække på det
 ene ben 21
 at trænge til 8
 træ 6
 tung 22
 en tunnel (-er) 12
 en tur (-e) 4
 at turde 28
 en turist (-er) 14
 en turistattraktion (-er)
 26
 et tusind (-er) 1
 et TV (-er) 17

en TV avis (-er) 18
 en tvillingebror
 (-brødre) 21
 typisk 5
 tysk 26
 en tysker (-e) 27
 Tyskland 26
 tyve 3
 tyvende 15
 at tælle 18
 at tænde 20
 at tænde for 27
 at tændes 20
 en tændstik (-ker) 20
 tænk 20
 at tænke 6
 (et) tøj 8
 tør 28
 et tørklæde (-r) 8
 at tørre 21
 en tørresnor (-e) 17
 et tårn (-e) 13
 U
 ualmindelig 9
 ud 3
 uden for 13
 uden om 20
 udenlandsk 25
 udlandet 4, 18
 en udlænding (-e) 5
 udmærket 6
 en udsigt (-er) 4
 (et) udstyr (-) 15
 et udvalg (-) 8
 en uge (-r) 14
 uhyggelig 27
 ukendt 16
 under 11
 at underkue 20
 (et) undertøj 17
 at undgå 17
 undskyld 8
 ung 2
 en ungdom 7
 et universitet (-er) 18
 uorden 27
 i uorden 27
 upraktisk 19
 et ur (-e) 19

(en) uro 18
 USA 1
 V
 en vagtafløsning (-er) 14
 en vagtparade (-r) 14
 et valg (-) 6
 (et) vand (-e) 13
 var 3
 en vare (-r) 2
 at vare 11
 varm 13
 en varme 13
 at vaske 17
 at vaskes 20
 Vatikanet 28
 ved 15
 ved siden af 3
 ved 8
 en vej (-e) 4
 et vejr 12
 at veksle 9
 vel 16
 vel 18, 27
 vel nok 3
 velbegavet 19
 velgennemtænkt 16
 velholdt 15
 velindrettet 16
 velkommen 1
 vellykket 23
 en ven (-ner) 3
 venlig 11, 16
 venstre 5
 til venstre 5
 at vente 2
 en verden (-er) 13
 vestpå 12
 en whisky (-er) 2
 vi 1
 at vide 7
 videre 6
 vidste 15
 vidunderlig 5
 vigtig 16
 en viking (-er) 24
 vil 3
 at ville 7
 en vin (-e) 17
 et vindue (-r) 11

en vinduesvisker (-e) 11
 en vinter (-tre) 13
 virke 16, 27
 virkelig 6
 at vise 8
 vist 3, 7
 en vogn (-e) 11, 24
 en vold (-e) 3
 en voldgrav (-e) 3
 vores 1
 at vække 6
 vældig 10
 vær så god 2
 værd 15
 at være 3
 et værelse (-r) 17
 været 4
 et værksted (-er) 11

værsgo' 2
 værst 12
 våd 12
 Y
 yndig 9
 Æ
 et æbletræ (-er) 20
 at æde 24
 et æg (-) 20
 ægte 14
 ældre 13
 ældst 13
 ærgerlig 11
 ærlig 11

Ø
 et øjeblik (-ke) 5
 øjne 8
 (et) øl (-ler) 11
 et ønske (-r) 1
 at ønske 16
 en øre 7
 at øse 13
 Østrig 27
 øvrig 7
 Å
 åben 28
 at åbne 22
 åh 3
 et år (-) 1
 i årevis 17
 en årstid (-er) 12